# Foreword

This manual applies to the model below:

| Vehicle model | Power type | Engine model | Transmission model | Drive type | Emission standards |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| DFM6473M5F1CHEV | PHEV | DFMC15TE3 | 4DHT | FF | Euro VIb |

Certain equipment or functions in this manual are marked with "*" to indicate that the equipment or functions are only available on certain models. Therefore, they may not be available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Please be sure to read the entire contents of the user manual (including electronic version) carefully, especially the contents of the **"Warning", "Notice", "Caution"** markings in the manual.

**"⚠ Warning"** indicates that failure to follow the instructions may result in serious personal injury or death.

**"👁 Notice"** indicates that dangerous or unsafe operation will result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

**" ℹ Caution"** is used to illustrate information that must be observed for ease of use and maintenance, etc. of the vehicle.

When operating this vehicle, please strictly observe local laws and regulations.

This manual is a valid part of the entire vehicle. When the vehicle is transferred, please transfer this manual with the vehicle.

Do not modify the vehicle because modifications may affect the safety, handling, performance and life of the vehicle and may violate regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems caused by modifications, adjustments, or disassembly will not be covered by our warranty.

Regular vehicle maintenance and repair must be carried out in accordance with the provisions of the Quality Warranty.

Any possible changes of the model, equipment, or functions may be made by Dongfeng Motor Corporation without prior notice.

# General Contents


## 1 Preparations for Driving

**Inspection before driving.....6**
Inspection before driving .....6
**Unlocking/locking.....6**
Smart key .....6
Unlocking doors with door inside handle 15
Door locking/unlocking in emergency.....15
Interior central door lock switch.....16
Autolock after driving.....16
Child safety lock .....17
Impact sensing door unlocking.....17
Automatic door relocking.....17
Walk-in unlocking .....17
Walk-away autolock.....17
**Storage/power supply .....18**
Storage box .....18
Power supply.....27
**Vehicle Charging .....29**
Charging port cover.....29
Charging description .....29
Charging mode.....31
Charging method.....32
Charging fault diagnosis.....37
**Discharge of vehicle.....38**
Charging method.....38
Discharge function setting .....40
**Safe ride .....41**
Driver seat.....41
Front passenger seat .....42
Heating and ventilation function of front seat* .....42
Welcome and memory function of driver seat* .....43
Rear seats .....44
Seat belts .....45
Supplement Restraint System (SRS).....51
Child safety seat.....57
**Adjustment before driving.....61**
Adjustment of steering wheel position....61
Interior rearview mirror .....61
Exterior rearview mirror .....62
Sun visor .....64
Vanity mirror .....65
Power windows .....65
Panoramic sunroof* .....67
HVAC (automatic A/C).....70
Lighting.....77
Windshield wiper & washer .....85

## 2 Safe Driving

**Driving instructions.....88**
Keeping the vehicle in normal conditions88
Maintaining the correct sitting posture....88
Driving with care.....89
Common sense and skills of driving.....90
Safe parking .....96
**Overview of driver's console functions .....98**
**Steering wheel control.....100**
Horn switch.....100
Steering wheel buttons* .....100
**Instrument cluster .....103**
Type of instrument cluster .....103
indicators and warning lights*.....107
Buzzer and text reminder*.....116
**Starting, shifting gears .....118**
Pedal area .....118
Vehicle start and power off .....119
Gearshift control .....121
Driving mode*.....123
Energy mode*.....124
**Braking and brake assistance.....125**
Electric park brake (EPB).....127
Automatic holding(AUTO HOLD) .....128
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....129
Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) ... 130
Brake assist (BA) system .....130
Brake override system (BOS).....130
Electronic stability control (ESC) system* .. 131
Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)* .....132
Hydraulic brake boost (HBB)* .....132
Hill hold control (HHC)* .....132
Traction control system (TCS)* .....132
Hill descent control (HDC)* .....133
Active rollover protection (ARP)*.....133
**Electric power steering system.....134**
**Dual-mode drive and energy feedback*.....135**
**AVAS*.....136**
**Cruise control*.....137**


1
2
3
4
5
6

Cruise control*....137
ACC*....139
**Intelligent driving assist*....144**
Forward collision warning (FCW)*....144
Automatic emergency braking (AEB)*..145
Lane keeping assist (LKA)*....147
Indirect tire pressure monitoring system ....152
**Parking assist....153**
PDC....153
Reverse camera *....155
360° AVM *....156
**Anti-theft system....160**
General description....160
Body anti-theft function....160
**Refueling....161**
Refueling....161

## 3 Emergency

**Hazard warning lights and reflective vests....164**
Hazard warning light....164
Reflective vest....164
**Warning triangle....165**
Using warning triangle....165
**Driver's tool....166**
Driver's tool....166
**Emergency tire repair....167**
Precautions for emergency tire repair..167
Preparations:....167
Emergency tire repair....168
**Replacing fuse....169**
EJB*....169
IPJB....171
Inspection and replacement of fuse....173
**Replacemene of bulb....174**
**Jump start....175**
Description of jump start....175
Jump start....176
**Towing and traction....178**
Precautions....178
Method of towing....178
Illustration of towing vehicle in wrong way .179
Towing eye position....179
Towing trapped vehicle....180
**SOS*....181**

## 4 Maintenance

**Instructions for maintenance....184**
**Routine maintenance....185**
Instruction for routine maintenance....185
Precautions for routine maintenance....185
Exterior routine maintenance items....185
Interior routine maintenance items....186
Other routine maintenance items....187
Exterior cleaning....188
Interior cleaning....190
Selecting sunshade film*....192
Vehicle corrosion protection....192
Hood....193
Operation instructions for routine maintenance....194
**Scheduled maintenance....212**
Schedule of Regular Maintenance Items....213
**Recycling and environmental protection....216**

## 5. Audio Visual System*


**Precautions ..... 218**
- Battery Safety and Precautions ..... 218
- Precautions for navigation* ..... 219

**Problems that may be encountered 220**
- Turning on/off the system ..... 221
- A/C/seat control* ..... 224
- Scenario mode ..... 225
- Radio/DAB radio* ..... 226
- Multimedia ..... 226
- Bluetooth phone ..... 227
- Gallery ..... 228
- CarPlay ..... 229
- Android auto ..... 229
- Vehicle center ..... 230
- Energy Center ..... 237


## 6 Technical Parameters


**Vehicle identification ..... 240**
- VIN and product label ..... 240
- Event data recorder (EDR) ..... 241
- OBD ..... 243
- Microwave window ..... 243
- Engine serial number ..... 243
- Multi-mode transmission nameplate ..... 244
- High voltage battery serial number ..... 244
- Warning label ..... 244

**Main Parameter of Vehicle ..... 246**
**Overall dimensions ..... 249**
**Main fluid specifications and capacity ..... 250**

# 1. Preparation for Driving


**Inspection before driving.....6**
Inspection before driving .....6
**Unlocking/locking.....6**
Smart key .....6
Unlocking doors with door inside handle 15
Door locking/unlocking in emergency.....15
Interior central door lock switch.....16
Autolock after driving.....16
Child safety lock .....17
Impact sensing door unlocking.....17
Automatic door relocking.....17
Walk-in unlocking .....17
Walk-away autolock.....17
**Storage/power supply .....18**
Storage box .....18
Power supply.....27
**Vehicle Charging .....29**
Charging port cover.....29
Charging description .....29
Charging mode.....31
Charging method.....32
Charging fault diagnosis.....37
**Discharge of vehicle.....38**
Charging method.....38
Discharge function setting.....40
**Safe ride .....41**
Driver seat.....41
Front passenger seat .....42
Heating and ventilation function of front seat* .....42
Welcome and memory function of driver seat* .....43
Rear seats.....44
Seat belts .....45
Supplement Restraint System (SRS).....51
Child safety seat.....57
**Adjustment before driving.....61**
Adjustment of steering wheel position....61
Interior rearview mirror .....61
Exterior rearview mirror .....62
Sun visor .....64
Vanity mirror .....65
Power windows .....65
Panoramic sunroof*.....67
HVAC (automatic A/C).....70
Lighting.....77
Windshield wiper & washer .....85

## Inspection before driving

- Check to make sure that the turn signal lights, brake lights, reversing lights, rear fog lights and other lights are normal.
- Visually check the tires for damage or embedded foreign objects and the tire pressure according to the routine maintenance methods in the "Maintenance" section.
- Check to confirm that the engine oil and other fluids are in the normal range according to the routine maintenance in the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Make sure all windows, rearview mirrors and lights are clean.

## Smart key

### Composition of smart key




① Smart key

② Mechanical key

Each vehicle is equipped with a smart key and a mechanical key. Only smart keys that match the vehicle can be used to open the doors and start the vehicle.

### Functions of smart key



The smart key has the following functions:

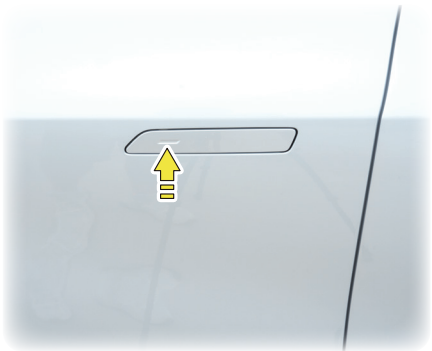
- **Keyless entry**: Carry the smart key with you and use the keyless entry function to unlock/lock the doors; press the opening switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper to unlock the tailgate;
- **Remote control function:**Remotely unlock/lock the doors, unlock the tailgate and start/stop the vehicle*;
- **Mechanical key:** Unlock/lock the doors;
- **Vehicle start/stop**: Start/stop the vehicle in conjunction with brake pedal;
- Convenient opening/closing of windows and sunroof*.

**Notice**

- If you have lost any key, please immediately contact an authorized dealer.
- Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle when leaving the vehicle.
- The smart key contains electronic components, so it shall be kept off water; otherwise the key may be damaged, affecting the system function.
- Do not strike other objects with the smart key.
- Do not put the smart key in the environment above 60°C for a long time.
- Do not put the smart key on a magnetic key holder.
- Do not put the smart key around a device generating magnetic field, such as audio equipment or WCM.
- With the vehicle running, when you leave the vehicle with the smart key, the drive motor can continue running. But once the vehicle is powered off, it cannot be started again. When a different person is driving the vehicle, the smart key shall be transferred to the driver.

## Keyless entry

### Keyless door unlocking



Carry the smart key and ensure it is within the effective range. When you touch the notch on the door handle, all doors will be unlocked, the hazard warning light will flash 2 times; At this time, press the front end of the hidden door handle and pull the rear end of the handle to open the door.

After keyless door unlocking, any of the doors shall be opened within 30 seconds, otherwise the doors will be automatically re-locked.

### Keyless door locking



Carry the smart key and ensure it is within the effective range. With the vehicle power supply in "OFF" mode, close all the doors and touch the notch on the door handle, then all doors will be locked, and the hazard warning light will flash once.

**Warning**

- After manual operation, the hidden door handles retract mechanically. So, please be careful to prevent your hands from being pinched by the door handles.

**Notice**

- In case of car washing in the north region in winter, remove the water in the gaps around the hidden door handles to prevent the door handles from being frozen due to icing.
- In cold weather, do not spray water directly on the doors, door handles and other gaps; otherwise, the door handles, door locks and seals may freeze and fail to open.

### Keyless tailgate opening




1. Take the smart key and ensure it is within the operating range;
2. Push the opening switch ① in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper;
3. Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically; as for all other models, the tailgate shall be pulled upwards manually.

### Operating range of keyless entry



The operating range refers to the effective distance between the smart key and each request switch.

The PEPS can only be used when the smart key is within the operating range.

If the smart key battery has run out or strong radio wave is generated on site, the operating range of the smart key system will be narrowed and the key may fail to function.

If the smart key is too close to the door window, door handle or rear bumper, the request switch may fail to function.

The smart key system generates weak radio wave, which may be influenced under the following conditions:

- There is a strong electromagnetic wave generator near the operating site, such as TV tower, power station or radio station.
- The radio equipment is used, such as cell phones, walkie-talkies, and radios.
- The smart key comes into contact with or is covered by metallic materials.

In the event of the PEPS failure, you shall first rule out whether or not you are in one of the above situations. Then, if the PEPS still does not work, you can use the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible to solve the problem.

**Notice**

- When the smart key is within operating range, anyone (including those not carrying the smart key) can press the request switch to lock/unlock the doors or open the tailgate.
- The radio waves emitted by the smart key may adversely affect electronic medical devices. For example, a patient with a pacemaker shall contact the hospital or the manufacturer of the electronic medical device to ask if he will be affected before using or approaching the smart key.
- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitting power, connect the external antenna or use other transmitting antenna without authorization.
- When using the smart key, if harmful interference to legitimate radio communication services is detected, stop using it immediately and contact an authorized dealer.
- Do not use the smart key on an airplane or on the site officially forbidding radio equipment.

### Cases where the PEPS is not available

The request switch cannot be used in the following cases:

- The vehicle power is not set to "OFF";
- The smart key is left in the vehicle;
- The smart key is out of the operating range;
- Any door is open or closed improperly;
- The smart key battery has run out.

### Door locking protection

When using the PEPS to lock the doors with all doors closed (including the tailgate), the doors will not be locked if the smart key is inside the vehicle (including the tailgate) to prevent the smart key from being accidentally locked inside the vehicle.

**Notice**

Do not leave the smart key in the following locations inside the vehicle to prevent the smart key from being locked inside the vehicle.

- Instrument panel or glove compartment;
- Rear shelf;
- Door storage box or cup holder slot;
- Corners in the trunk or under the vehicle tools;
- Inside or near metallic materials.

## Remote control



Press the corresponding button on the key to realize the corresponding function:

Lock button - lock the doors, raise the windows remotely*;

Unlock button - unlock the doors, lower the windows remotely*;

Tailgate button - Activate the tailgate unlocking request*, unlock and open tailgate*, and close and lock tailgate*;

Remote vehicle start/stop button* - remotely start the vehicle* , remotely stop the vehicle*;

Vehicle search button* - Vehicle search function*.

**Notice**

The remote control is a sensitive control device. Do not fiddle with it lest the doors might be unlocked unexpectedly and the device might fail.

### Remote door unlocking

1. Press the unlock button ;
2. The hazard warning light flashes 2 times;
3. All doors are unlocked;
4. Press the front end of hidden door handle and pull the rear part of door outside handle to open the door.

After unlocking the doors remotely, if either door is not opened within 30s, the doors will be automatically relocked.

### Remote door locking

1. Switch the vehicle power supply to "OFF" mode;
2. Close all the doors (including the tailgate);
3. Press the lock button on the smart key;
4. The hazard warning light lights up once;
5. All doors are locked.

**Notice**

After locking the doors remotely, be sure to pull the door outside handle to confirm that the doors are securely locked.

### Remote vehicle search

When the vehicle is locked, press the lock button or the car locator button on the smart key twice consecutively within 3 seconds (with an interval of more than 100 ms) to activate the function, at which time the hazard warning light flashes for 15 seconds or the horn sounds (can be set in CSD) to facilitate the vehicle locating quickly.

Tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Car Search Mode" bar of the CSD in turn to set the car search mode. The "Sound+Light" or "Light" alarm mode can be set.

### Remote unlocking/locking of tailgate*

- Within the valid remote control range, press the unlock button on the remote control to activate the tailgate unlocking request, and press the open switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper. Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically; as for all other models, the tailgate shall be pulled upwards manually.
- Or press and hold the tailgate unlock button on the remote control. Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically; as for all other models, press the open switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper and pull up the tailgate to open it.
- For models equipped with POT, when the tailgate is open, if you press and hold the tailgate unlock button on the remote control, the tailgate will close automatically.

**Caution**

Regarding the models not equipped with the POT, when you press the unlock button or the tailgate unlock button on the remote control only, the tailgate will not be unlocked and opened, but only the unlock request is activated.

### Remote automatic window opening*

Press and hold the unlock button on the key for more than 3 seconds to lower the window glass automatically until the window is fully opened.

**Caution**

If you release the button during the automatic opening of the window, the window glass will stop lowering.

### Remote automatic window closing*

With the vehicle power switched off, in case the window or sunroof is closed improperly after the doors are locked, pressing and holding the lock button on the key for more than 3 seconds can lift the window glass or close the sunroof automatically until the window glass is lifted or the sunroof is closed completely.

**Warning**

During automatic closing of the window or sunroof, ensure that no human body part is in the closing area of the window or sunroof, lest personal injury might occur.

**Caution**

If you release the button during automatic closing of window or sunroof, the window will stop closing, but the sunroof will not.

### Remotely start/shut down the vehicle *

Press and hold the vehicle SSB on the key to start the vehicle remotely.

With the vehicle started, press and hold the vehicle start/stop button on the key to remotely stop the vehicle.

### Conditions where the remote control fails to work

The effective distance at which the remote control works depends on the conditions around the vehicle. The remote door opening/closing function may not be available in the following cases:

- The vehicle power supply is set to "ON".
- The smart key is not in the operating area (e.g., when there are many obstacles).
- Any door is open or closed improperly.
- The smart key battery has run out.

**Notice**

The remote control might be affected by electronic accessories added in the vehicle, such as on-board GPS. Therefore, any electronic accessory shall be added in the vehicle by the technicians from an authorized dealer only.

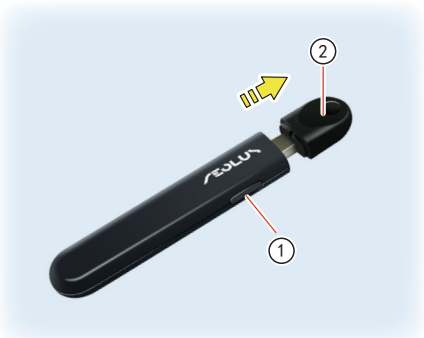
### Failure to lock the doors

| Phenomenon | Possible causes and solutions |
|---|---|
| The buzzer sounds during door locking | Check if one smart key is left inside the vehicle.<br>Remove the smart key from the vehicle and lock the doors again. |
| | Check if the vehicle power switch is not set to "OFF" position.<br>Set the vehicle power switch to "OFF", and lock the doors again. |
| Locking/ unlocking sound can be heard during door locking. | Check if the tailgate is closed improperly.<br>Closethe tailgateand relock it. |
| | Check if any door is closed improperly.<br>Close all doors and relock them. |

## Mechanical key

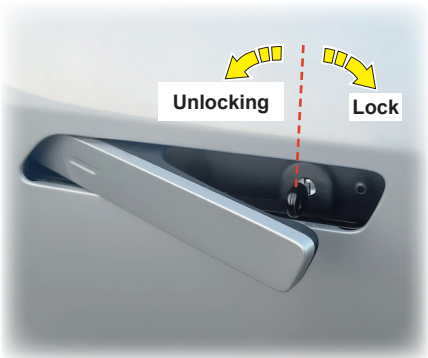
If the PEPS and remote door unlocking/locking function do not work, the doors may be unlocked/locked by the mechanical key.

### Removing mechanical key




Press the locking button ① and withdraw the mechanical key ②.

### Unlocking/locking of door with mechanical key




Unlock the vehicle, press the front end of the driver door handle to tilt the door handle, insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the door.

After confirming that all the doors are fully closed, pull the driver door handle against the door and then turn the mechanical key clockwise to lock the door. After locking, the door needs to be pushed so that the door closes completely and locks securely. Then pull the door handle to make sure the door is securely locked.

## Replacement of key battery

Battery life depends on the frequency of operation and the surrounding environment, and is generally about 2 years under normal use. If the remote control function on the smart key cannot be used normally at a closer distance, or if the smart key is already in the vehicle but the instrument cluster screen prompts "Smart key is not in the vehicle" or "Smart key not detected", the battery will run out or has run out. So, please replace the battery with a new one as soon as possible.

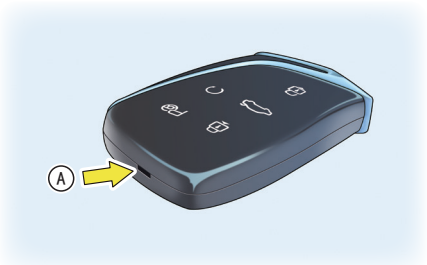
It is recommended to replace the smart key battery at an authorized dealer, or operate under the guidance of a professional to avoid damaging the smart key.

If you replace it by yourself, the CR2032 battery and the corresponding tool are required.

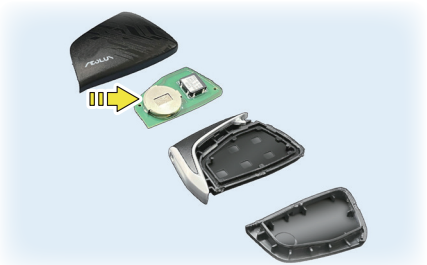
**Notice**

- Be careful not to let children swallow the battery and removed parts.
- Improper disposal of discarded batteries will jeopardize the environment, so please dispose of them in accordance with relevant laws and regulations.

## Replacement procedures




1. Separate the front trim cover of the key by prying it from the notch Ⓐ underneath the smart key by using a small slotted screwdriver wrapped with cloth;



2. Push out the battery and replace the battery with a new one:

Battery: CR2032 or equivalent.

3. Ensure that the end face of the battery positive electrode faces the casing side marked with logo, and install the battery fully into the battery mounting slot;
4. Reinstall the smart key body cover and trim cover in place;
5. Operate all buttons to check if they work normally.

**ℹ Caution**

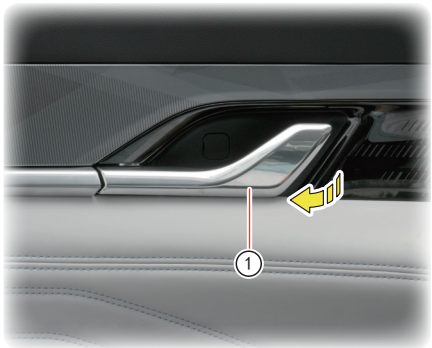
It is recommended that the key battery be replaced at an authorized dealer, as doing so on your own may cause damage to the smart key.

## Notice for environmental protection

The battery contains pollutants. It is illegal to dispose of batteries with household waste. Batteries must be sorted out for collection and recycled in an environmentally friendly manner.

Please dispose of batteries in an environmentally friendly manner. Send the disposed battery to an authorized dealer or a special waste battery recycling point.

## Unlocking doors with door inside handle




When the door is locked by the interior central door lock, it can be unlocked by the driver door inside handle:

- Unlock all the doors by pulling the driver door inside handle (1) once, and then open the corresponding door by pulling the door inside handle on the corresponding door.

**Notice**

- When the door is locked by the interior central door lock, it cannot be unlocked by the passenger door inside handle. At this time, please do not pull the door inside handle forcibly so as not to cause damage to the handle.

**Notice**

- When the vehicle is parked by the roadside, after the vehicle comes to a stop, the driver shall check from the rearview mirror that there is no pedestrian or oncoming vehicle in the rear, before opening the door or reminding the passengers to get off the vehicle. (It is recommended that the rear passengers do not open the left rear door.)
- Before opening the door to get off the vehicle (especially from the left side), the passengers shall check the situation in rear of the vehicle and slightly open the door to confirm safety.
- If the rear door cannot be opened from the inside, possibly due to locked child safety lock of the rear door, do not pull the door inside handle forcibly, so as not to damage the door inside handle. In that case, unlock and open the door from the outside.

**Warning**

During driving, it is strictly forbidden to pull the door inside handle, for fear of an accident due to accidental opening of the door. If a child sits in the rear seat, the child safety lock shall be activated to prevent accidental opening of the door.

## Door locking/unlocking in emergency

If the smart key battery has run out or the central door lock is faulty, the door can be locked by the door inner lock button.

**Notice**

If the child safety lock is activated when the door is locked by the emergency lock means, the rear door cannot be opened. The rear door can be opened from the outside only after the battery is restored and the vehicle is unlocked.

### Door locking in emergency



If the battery is dead or faulty, all passenger doors can be locked with the emergency lock. The operations are as follows:

- When the door is open, rotate the emergency lock using the mechanical key (as indicated by the arrow).
- The doors are locked once closed.

The corresponding door can be unlocked with the inside door handle. After unlocking, the emergency lock will return to its initial position.

The driver door can be locked or unlocked at any time using the mechanical key.



## Interior central door lock switch

When the doors are locked, press the switch to unlock all doors. When the doors are unlocked, press the switch to lock all doors.

**Notice**

If any door is closed improperly, it will not be successfully locked by the interior central door lock switch, which is indicated by a locking sound, followed by an unlocking sound. In that case, identify the cause and do troubleshooting before locking the door again.

## Autolock after driving

### Autolock after driving

When the autolock after driving function is activated and all the doors are closed properly, the doors will be locked automatically after the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h.

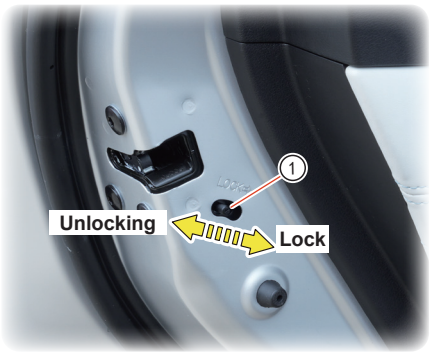
### Activating the autolock after driving

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, press and hold the lock button on central door lock switch for more than 3s, or turn on the function in the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Door and Window Lock" -"Autolock After Driving" on the CSD. At this time, the instrument cluster displays "**Autolock Enabled**" and the hazard warning light flashes once, indicating that the autolock after driving will be activated.

### Deactivating the autolock after driving

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, press and hold the lock button on central door lock switch for 3s again, or turn off the function in the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Door and Window Lock" -"Autolock After Driving" on the CSD. At this time, the instrument cluster displays "**Autolock Disabled**" for 3s and the hazard warning light flashes 2 times, indicating that the autolock after driving will be deactivated.

## Child safety lock




### Activating child safety lock

Open the rear door, and pull the slide ① inwards to activate the child safety lock. At this time, no matter the door is unlocked or not, it cannot be opened from the inside. To open the door, unlock it and then open it from the outside.

### Deactivating the child safety lock

Open the rear door, and pull the slide ① outwards to deactivate the child safety lock.

**Notice**

- When there is a child passenger in the vehicle, the driver shall activate the child safety lock and deactivate the passenger window switches, so as to avoid accidents due to accidental opening of the rear doors or windows by the child.
- Never leave children or adults to be attended alone in the vehicle. They may trigger the switch or controller accidentally, causing an accident.

## Impact sensing door unlocking

In case of collision during driving, the airbags will deploy, the doors will automatically be unlocked, and the hazard warning light may go on automatically.

## Automatic door relocking

When the vehicle doors are locked, if none of the doors (including the tailgate) is opened or the vehicle power switch is not set to non- "OFF" position within 30s after the doors are unlocked, the doors will be locked again automatically.

**Notice**

Even if the vehicle allows automatic door relocking, do not play with the smart key after the vehicle is locked, and keep the vehicle locked, so as to avoid unnecessary losses due to accidental unlocking of the door.

## Walk-in unlocking

When the function is enabled by tapping "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Door and Window Lock" - "Walk-in Unlocking", the door will be unlocked automatically if the doors are locked and the smart key is carried 1m close to the vehicle (tailgate or left front door handle).

## Walk-away autolock

When the function is enabled by tapping "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Door and Window Lock" - "Walk-away Autolock" on the CSD, the door will be locked automatically if the vehicle power supply is in "OFF" mode, the shift lever is placed in "P" position, all the doors are closed, and the driver carrying the smart key is 1.5m away from the vehicle (perpendicular to the tailgate or the left door handle).

## Storage box

### Trunk storage box

The tailgate can be opened in any of the following ways:

- For the vehicle with POT, the tailgate will open automatically when you press the unlock button on the remote control, or press and hold the tailgate unlock button on the remote control, or press the opening switch in the middle of the tailgate/ rear bumper while carrying the smart key with you; for other models, the tailgate has to be opened by pulling it up.
- For the models equipped with POT, when the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Tailgate" on the CSD or press the Custom button on the steering wheel (set in CSD).

**⚠ Warning**

- Special care must be taken when driving. All items must be securely put in the trunk, and emergency braking and sharp turn shall be avoided as much as possible; otherwise the items inside the trunk may be thrown out, or the tailgate may be prone to damage due to dramatic movement.
- It is strictly prohibited to drive the vehicle with the tailgate open; otherwise, it may cause accidents. Local traffic regulations must also be strictly observed.

#### Opening by the remote control

- Within the valid remote control range, press the unlock button on the remote control to activate the tailgate unlocking request, and press the open switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper:
  - Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically;
  - Regarding all other models, you shall lift the tailgate up to open it.
- Or, you shall press and hold the Tailgate unlock button on the remote control:
  - Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically;
  - Regarding all other models, you shall press the open switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper while pulling the tailgate upward to open it.

**i Caution**

Regarding the models not equipped with the POT, when you press the unlock button or the tailgate unlock button on the remote control only, the tailgate will not be unlocked and opened, but only the unlock request is activated.

## Opening with PEPS function*

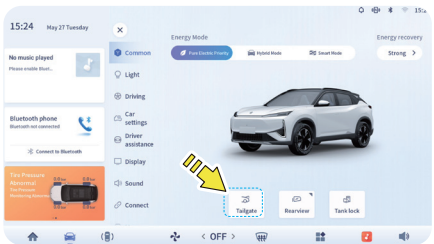



1. Take the smart key and ensure it is within the operating range;
2. Press the opening switch in the middle of the tailgate/rear bumper;
3. Regarding the models equipped with the POT, the tailgate will be opened automatically; as for all other models, the tailgate shall be pulled upwards manually.

**Caution**

When the vehicle is stationary for a long period of time, the pneumatic supporting rod will rattle when the tailgate is opened for the first time.

## Opening tailgate with soft switch on CSD*




When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, sequentially tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Tailgate" icon on the CSD or the "Tailgate" icon on the drop-down menu interface, the icon will be highlighted, and the tailgate will automatically open.

## Opening tailgate via steering wheel custom buttons*





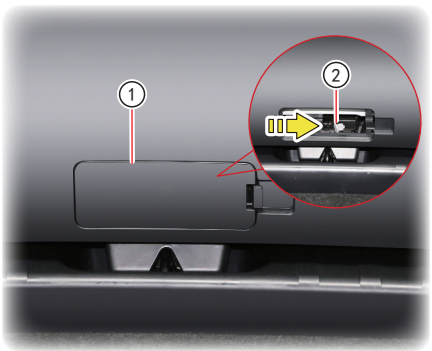


When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the tailgate is closed, and it is set to "Tailgate Switch" by tapping "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Usage Preference" - "Steering Wheel Custom Buttons" in the CSD; if you press the steering wheel custom button ① or ② at this time, the tailgate will automatically open.

## Opening the tailgate manually*

When you pull up the tailgate quickly to a certain travel, the automatic opening function of the POT can be triggered automatically. Then the tailgate will open automatically.

## Emergency mode on




1. Fold the seat backrest on one side;
2. Access the trunk from inside the vehicle, and open the tailgate locking block trim cover ①;
3. Toggle the lock body block ② to the right (in the direction of the arrow) to the far right to unlock the tailgate;
4. Push outward to open the tailgate.

## Closing the tailgate manually




Check the closing area of the tailgate for obstacles or bodies of other people.

If there is a lot of luggage, gently try to close the tailgate first, check to make sure that there is no luggage pushing against the tailgate. Otherwise, you shall organize the luggage before closing the tailgate.

Hold the snap handle ① at the right-hand side of the tailgate and pull the tailgate down to the 3/4 travel position, and then press the tailgate downward with both hands slightly towards the front until it is locked securely.

## Closing the tailgate manually*

When you pull down the tailgate quickly to a certain travel, the automatic closing function of the POT can be triggered automatically. Then the tailgate will close automatically.

## Closing the tailgate automatically*




Check the closing area of the tailgate for obstacles or bodies of other people. If there is a lot of luggage, check to make sure that there is no luggage pushing against the tailgate. Otherwise, you shall organize the luggage before closing the tailgate.

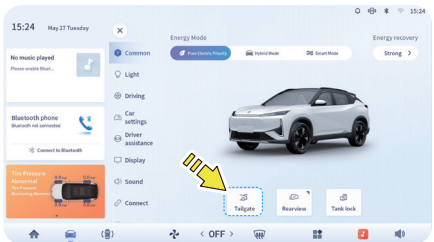
When the tailgate is open, pressing the closing button ① on the left-hand side of the tailgate, the POT will automatically lower until it is closed; In the process of POT closing, pressing the button again will make the POT stop closing. To open the tailgate, just press the button again.

## Closing with the remote control



When you press and hold (≥1.4s) the tailgate unlock button on the remote control and the buzzer sounds once, the POT will be closed automatically, and the hazard warning light will flash 2 times; During the closing process, pressing the button again will make the POT stop closing.

## Closing tailgate with soft switch on CSD*




When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, sequentially tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Tailgate" icon on the CSD or the "Tailgate" icon on the drop-down menu interface, the icon will be dimmed, and the tailgate will be automatically closed.

## Closing tailgate via steering wheel custom buttons*







When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the tailgate is open, and it is set to "Tailgate Switch" by tapping "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Usage Preference" - "Steering Wheel Custom Buttons" in the CSD; if you press the steering wheel custom button ① or ② at this time, the tailgate will close automatically.

### Closing the tailgate in delay*




When you carry the smart key with you, press the closing button ① on the left of the tailgate twice in succession and leave the vehicle with the smart key within 60 seconds, then the delayed closing function of the tailgate will be triggered and the tailgate will close automatically.

## POT settings*

### Settings of tailgate locking function

- In the "Vehicle Center"-"Vehicle Settings"-"Door and Window Lock"- "Autolock after Tailgate Closing" bar on the CSD, the whole vehicle locking function after the POT closing can be activated or deactivated.
- When the autolock after tailgate closing is turned on, all the doors that are closed will be locked automatically as with the closing of POT.

### POT opening angle setting*

### Settings of POT switch:




- When the tailgate is between the 50% maximum mechanical opening angle and 95% maximum mechanical opening angle, if you press and hold the closing button ① on the left side of the tailgate for more than 5s, the current opening angle will be set to the maximum power-driven opening angle of the tailgate, and then the buzzer beeps once.

### Setting via CSD:

- In the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Door and Window Lock" - "POT Height Memory Adjustment" bar on the CSD, you can set the opening height of the POT; After successful settings, the buzzer will give a long "tick".

**⚠ Warning**

- If the negative cable of the battery has been disconnected when the POT is open, it is necessary to close the tailgate manually to the full lock state for initialization to restore the function of the POT.
- Do not set the height while the tailgate is in motion.
- Do not open the tailgate while traveling.
- Do not operate the tailgate for opening/closing frequently. Otherwise, it will trigger the protection mechanism of the POT and limit the POT function; if the protection mechanism is triggered, the function will be restored automatically after a certain interval of time.

### Safety precautions for storage in the trunk

The trunk can be used to store objects in large sizes. Please follow the precautions below:

- The gravity of object shall be close to the floor and rear seat backrest.
- Hard objects shall be close to the rear seat backrest.
- Do not allow objects to interfere with the reliable closing of the tailgate or to be pressed against the door when the door is closed.
- Do not place any liquid, fragile and hazardous objects in the trunk.
- It is recommended to bind the stored objects properly.

### Maximizing trunk storage

The trunk storage space can be expanded by following the steps below:

1. Fold down the rear seats; (refer to "Folding the rear seats" on page 45)
2. The trunk storage space can be expanded.

**Notice**

When expanding the trunk capacity to load heavier items, please fix the items with fixing straps to prevent the items from sliding during emergency braking or rapid acceleration, which may cause injuries.

### Storage box under the trunk floor (left and right)*



1. Open the tailgate:
2. You can use the left and right storage boxes under the trunk floor to store some light and soft items.

**Notice**

You can store some vehicle tools (e.g. wrenches, etc.).

Use a sealing bag to store these tools to avoid damage to trunk floor due to collision

between these tools and trunk floor during vehicle driving.

### Storage box on door



The storage box located on each door interior trim panel can be used to store towels, papers, newspapers, mineral water bottles and others; The handle box can be used for closing the door.

### Left storage box on instrument panel



The left storage box on instrument panel can be used to store access cards, highway toll cards, fuel cards, business cards, tickets and other items.

## Central armrest box



The front cup holder and the central armrest box are located in the center rear of the console.

**Notice**

- When the cover of the cup holder is not opened, do not place objects such as a cup on it, so as to prevent the objects from falling down during emergency braking or turning, which may cause accidents.
- The front cup holder must not be used as an ashtray. Otherwise, there is a risk of fire.

### Central armrest



The cover of the central armrest box functions as the central armrest.

### Central armrest box



Hold the front end of the central armrest box cover to open the cover upwards so as to use the central armrest box.

The central armrest box can be used to store some sealed snacks, drinks and other items suitable for journey.

## Storage slots below center console



The storage slots on both sides of the center console are used to hold small portable handbags, plastic bags for waste, etc.

## Glove box



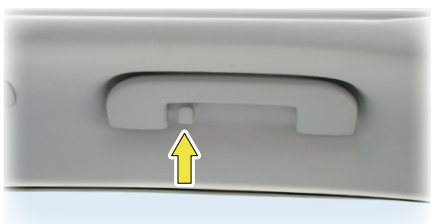
The glove box is located in front of the front passenger seat.

Pull the handle to open the glove box, and push the cover to close it.

**Notice**

- In order to concentrate on driving, please do not use the glove box in driving.
- Close the glove box before driving to avoid additional injury due to an accident or emergency braking.
- The glove box cannot be used to keep valuables for a long time, so please take away your valuables when you leave the vehicle.

## Coat hook



The coat hook is located next to the handle above the rear door window, and can be used to hook light coats and hats.

**Notice**

- The coat hook can only be used for items not exceed 1 kg.
- No solid objects shall be hung onto the hook for they may become hazardous projectiles in case of emergency.

## Storage bag on front backrest*



The storage bag on front backrest can be used to store light and soft items (e.g. newspaper).

**Notice**

Storage of too thick items may affect the comfort of rear passengers, and may cause unrecoverable deformation to the storage bag.

## Rear cup holder*



Pull down the armrest in the center of the rear seat backrest to a horizontal position. Then, the locating slot of the rear cup holder can be used.

## Power supply

### Power outlet



There is a 12V power interface under the center console.

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, flip open the cover of the power socket. Then, you can use the vehicle power plug to get power through the power socket. This power interface can provide 12V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120W (10A).

After use, re-install the cover of the power socket properly.

**⚠ Warning**

- It is strictly forbidden to use an inverter to obtain power from the 12V power port.
- It is strictly prohibited to use loads with rated power more than 12V DC 120W at the power interface, as this will burn out the fuse.
- Do not allow children to play with the power outlet and the connected electrical appliance to avoid accidents.
- If the connected electrical appliance is overheated, you must turn it off immediately and unplug it from the power outlet to avoid fire.
- Never use an electrical appliance exceeding the allowable maximum power to avoid vehicle failure or fire.
- After use, close the protective cover of the power outlet in time to prevent foreign objects from falling into it and causing danger.

**Notice**

- When the instrument cluster screen shows "Power System Failure", the power system shall be overhauled as soon as possible at an authorized dealer.
- Do not take power for a long time when the engine is not running, or the battery power may easily run out.
- Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug the electrical appliance from the power socket. Otherwise, it may lead to abnormal function of the SSB, failure to start the vehicle, failure to release the steering column lock, etc. Additionally, it may also damage the electrical appliance due to voltage fluctuation.

## USB interfaceand wireless charging*

### Electrical equipment interface in the front of console



A USB interface is located at the front of the storage space under the console with a maximum power of 10.8W.

These interfaces work only when the vehicle power supply is set to "ON".

The front USB interface supports regular USB flash disk function and charging.

### Electrical equipment interface at the rear of console*



The power port located at the rear of the console can be used to charge a mobile phone via a USB cable, and it has a maximum power of 18W.

These interfaces work only when the vehicle power supply is set to "ON".

## Charging port cover



### Charging port cover opening/closing

The charging port is located on the right of the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in "OFF" mode and is unlocked, if you press on the rear of the charging port cover, the cover will be unlocked and then pop open slightly.

Press the charging port cover until it is completely closed and locked.

### Charging port lid opening/closing

When the charging port cover is open, remove the AC charging port cover and the DC charging port cover outwards.

When charging is completed, refit the charging port lid in place.

## Charging description

**Security warning for charging**

**⚠ Warning**

- Only the charging kit (including the 220 V household charging cable) originally supplied with the vehicle or approved by the Dongfeng Motor Corporation can be used. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged or even a fire will be caused.
- Please charge in a safe environment (moisture-proof and high temperature resistant environment).
- It is forbidden to modify or disassemble the charging port or charging equipment, otherwise it may cause charging failure or even fire.
- Before charging, please make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port of the vehicle and the charging cable connector, and that the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded. Otherwise, do not charge the vehicle. Improper terminal connection may cause short circuit or electric shock, which is life threatening.
- If it is found that the vehicle emits peculiar smell or smoke during vehicle charging, stop charging immediately and contact the authorized dealer in time.

- In order to avoid personal injury, please keep the following points in mind during vehicle charging:
  - Do not touch the charging port on the vehicle or the metal terminal in the charging cable connector;
  - In case of lightning, do not charge or touch the vehicle. Lightning may damage the charging device of the vehicle or even cause personal injury.
- When the charging is over, do not disconnect the charging cable connector with wet hands or standing in the wet position, which may cause electric shock and personal injury.
- If you need to use the medical electronic device in the vehicle, please confirm with the manufacturer whether the charging of the vehicle will affect the normal operation of the medical device to avoid the medical device malfunction during charging, resulting in personal injury.
- If you have a pacemaker and other devices implanted, please confirm with the manufacturer whether the driving of this vehicle affects the normal operation of pacemaker, so as to avoid personal injury.

# Vehicle Charging

## Precautions for charging

### Notice

- Whenever the charging is completed, always close the charging port cover properly to ensure its normal closing in the future.
- If the power meter points the red warning area, it indicates that the power of the high voltage battery is seriously insufficient. In this case, please charge immediately to avoid the vehicle unable to run due to insufficient power.
- During the use of the vehicle, the high voltage battery shall be fully charged at least once a month.
- Before storing the vehicle for a long period of time, please make sure to charge it to the power level of 100% and then discharge it to a power level between 30% and 50%. If the storage time exceeds three months, the battery must be charged regularly, otherwise it may cause excessive discharge of the battery, thereby reducing the performance of the battery. This will cause vehicle failure and damage and invalidate the warranty.
- Passengers shall not stay in the vehicle while charging.
- The vehicle shall be parked in a place with well ventilation for charging.

### Notice

- When charging the vehicle, it is recommended not to turn on A/C which will accelerate the loss of high voltage battery and make it unable to be fully charged.
- When charging at the charging station, please leave the charging vehicle and charge in strict accordance with the requirements of the charging station. Due to the danger of high voltage, please stand outside the safety line.
- When the high voltage battery is fully charged, the system will automatically stop charging.
- Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging port lid and the charging port cover are closed properly. If the charging port lid is not closed, water or foreign matters may enter the charging port, affecting normal use.
- When the ambient temperature is below 0°C, the charging efficiency is reduced, so the charging time is longer than the normal condition.
- When the ambient temperature is lower than -20°C, charging may not be possible; please charge the vehicle at an ambient temperature higher than -20°C.
- When the ambient temperature is higher than 55°C, charging may not be possible; so please charge the vehicle at an ambient temperature lower than 55°C.

### Notice

- To avoid damage to the charging equipment, please pay attention to the followings:
  - Do not close the charging port cover with the charging port lid open;
  - Do not pull or twist the charging cable;
  - Do not hit the charging equipment;
  - Do not place the charging cable near a heater or other heat sources.
  - During charging, the charging cable connector will be locked. In this case, do not pull out the connector forcibly to avoid damaging the electrical interface.

### Caution

- When the temperature of the high voltage battery is extremely low or high, you may hear the sound of the water pump working inside the front compartment during vehicle charging, which is a normal phenomenon.
- If you need to purchase a charging kit (including 220V household charging cable), please consult your local authorized dealer.

## Charging mode

When the pointer of the power meter on instrument cluster points or is about to point the red warning area, the vehicle shall be charged. Although the vehicle can travel a certain distance when the battery is low, frequent deep discharging of the battery will shorten the service life of the high voltage battery. So, it is very important to charge the battery in time to store energy and make a full estimate of whether the battery's stored power can meet the expected mileage consumption before traveling.
Vehicle charging method:

- Household single-phase AC charging;
- AC charging with household charging pile;
- DC charging in charging station.

**Caution**

- The time required for sufficient high voltage battery charging varies depending on the charging method, remaining charge, real-time temperature, usage time, ambient temperature, and conditions. The data given in this manual may differ from the time required for actual charging.
- For AC charging method, refer to the latest version of the national standard "Connection Device for Conductive Charging of Electric Vehicles - Part 2: AC Charging Interface".

| Charging mode | Charging port position | Charging cable connector | Charging description |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mode 1: household AC charging (≤ 16A) |  |  | Charging on a 220V 50Hz 16A socket for domestic use |
| Mode 2: charging with household charging pile (≤ 32A) | |  | Charging through household charging pile (output power 7 kW and above) |
| Mode 3: DC (fast) charging in charging station |  |  | Fast charging at public charging stations (emergency charging method, not recommended for long-term use) |

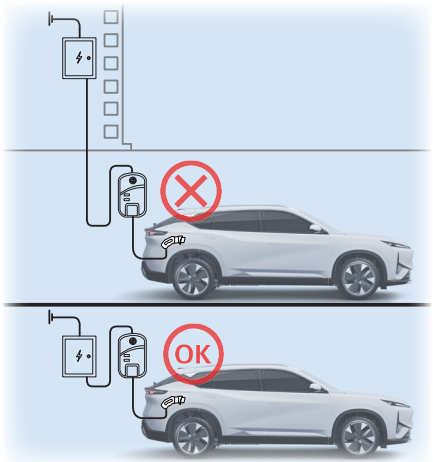
## Vehicle Charging

When it is charged by the household charging method, charging cables and charging sockets of appropriate wire diameter shall be installed according to the different magnitudes of charging currents, and the specific selection standard is as follows:

| Household charging Current (A) | cable Material | Cable cross section Area ($mm^2$) | Charging socket |
|---|---|---|---|
| ≤16 | Copper | 4 | 16A/250V |
| ≤32 | | 6 | - |

**⚠ Warning**

- It is strictly prohibited to use charging cables and charging sockets with too small specifications; otherwise, the charging current may be too large, causing the charging cable or charging socket to overheat and cause a fire.
- When using the household charging socket for charging, it is strictly prohibited to place the charging socket on the vehicle or add a power strip between the charging socket and the charging cable connector, otherwise it is easy to cause fire.




**⚠ Warning**

- When installing the household charging socket or charging pile, the length of the cable connecting the air switch and the charging socket or charging pile shall not exceed 1m, otherwise it is easy to cause fire.

### Charging method

When the instrument cluster indicates that the high voltage battery is low, please charge the high voltage battery in time.

**Notice**

- It is recommended to charge the high voltage battery before the power drops to the red warning line, which can avoid the later vehicle start failure due to insufficient power. At the same time, timely charging is beneficial to the battery. It is strictly prohibited to charge the battery after the power is depleted.
- The time required to complete the charging of the high voltage battery is affected by the charging method, the SOC of the high voltage battery, the real-time temperature, the usage time and the ambient temperature. The actual time required for charging may be different from the data given in this manual.

### Charging equipment grounding instructions

The charging equipment must be well grounded so that if the charging equipment malfunctions or is damaged, the grounding wire can support a minimum impedance circuit discharge to reduce the risk of electric shock. The charging equipment is equipped with a grounding wire that connects the equipment grounding point to the three-phase plug grounding point. The plug must be mated to a properly installed and grounded power socket.

### Inspection before charging

Before charging, make sure that there are no foreign objects in the charging gun and the charging port, and that the anti-touch cap of the charging gun terminal is not loose or deformed, hold the charging gun in your hand, aim the charging gun at the charging port and push it vertically to ensure that the charging gun is inserted into place.

Do not charge the vehicle if the surface of the vehicle socket is damaged, rusted, cracked or the connection is too loose.

When the vehicle plug is dirty or wet, wipe the plug with dry, clean cloth to ensure that the charging plug is dry and clean.

Inserting/unplugging the charging gun should be performed at a constant speed, and avoid tilting or shaking.

Do not shake the charging cable when charging, as this may damage the vehicle's charging port.

**Notice**

- Whenever the charging is completed, always close the charging port cover properly to ensure its normal closing in the future.

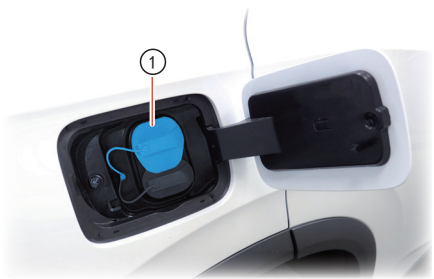
## AC charging method

### Method 1: AC charging with household single-phase AC

Connect the vehicle to a household single-phase two-pole grounding socket via an AC charging device, with one end connected to the household single-phase two-pole grounding socket and the vehicle plug at the other end connected to the vehicle AC charging port.

The household AC charging cable is placed in the storage space under the trunk carpet. (If equipped)

The detailed charging method is as follows:




1. Before charging, make sure that the high voltage connection on the vehicle is not faulty;
2. When the vehicle power supply is switched to "OFF" mode and the vehicle is unlocked, if you press on the rear of the AC charging port cover cap, the cover cap will be unlocked and then pop open;
3. Remove the charging port lid ① to charge via the charging port;
4. Connect the charging cable connector to the 220V power socket, check and confirm that the power indicator of the charging equipment stays on in green;



5. Press the drop-proof button on the charging cable connector to remove the protective cover;

**Warning**

- The household supply of electricity is at 220V, 50Hz and 10 A. In the absence of a dedicated line for charging, users shall not purchase the 10 A/16A adapter, so as to avoid electric line tripping and damage caused by high power consumption during charging, which will affect the use of other equipment on the line. Please contact a professional electrician to install the dedicated line.

**Notice**

- The power socket must be grounded. If it is not connected, the vehicle cannot be charged.

6. Align the connector with the AC charging port, completely insert it into the port, and verify that the connector is locked. Check and confirm that the indicator on the charging device is green and remains on;
7. When charging starts, the charging cable connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the charging reminder indicator and the power bar flash;
8. When charging is completed, the charging reminder indicator stops flashing and remains on and the power bar stops flashing;

**Notice**

- When the charging cable connector is connected to the vehicle charging port, the connector will be locked.

9. End of charging: disconnect the charging plug, press the drop-proof button to unlock the charging cable connector, disconnect the charging cable connector and cover it with a protective cover, and store the charging equipment properly;
10. Close the charging port lid and charging port cover;
11. The household AC charging ends.

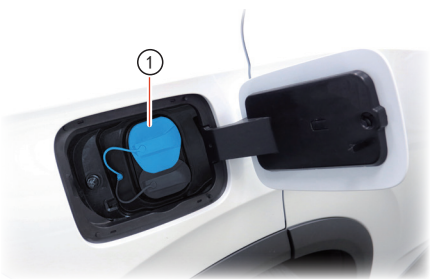
**Caution**

- After charging is stopped, the operating interval between the charging plug unplugging and the later plugging for charging should be ≥ 3 seconds.

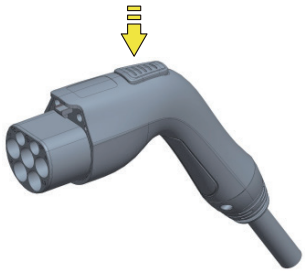
### Mode 2: AC charging with household charging pile

Connect the vehicle to the AC charging pile via the AC charging equipment to realize AC charging.

The detailed charging method is as follows:




1. Before charging, make sure that the high voltage connection on the vehicle is not faulty;
2. With the drive motor turned off and the vehicle unlocked, when you press the rear of the AC charging port cover, the AC charging port cover unlocks and pops open;
3. Remove the charging port lid ① to charge via the charging port;



4. Press the drop-proof button on the charging cable connector to remove the protective cover;

**Notice**

- Whenever the charging is completed, always close the charging port cover properly to ensure its normal closing in the future.

5. Align the connector with the words "Vehicle interface" with the AC charging port, completely insert it into the port, and verify that the connector is locked;
6. The "charging" indicator on the charging pile flashes;
7. The charging pile is set (e.g. by swiping a card) to start charging;
8. When charging starts, the charging cable connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the charging reminder indicator and the power bar flash;

**Notice**

- When the charging cable connector is connected to the vehicle charging port, the connector will be locked.

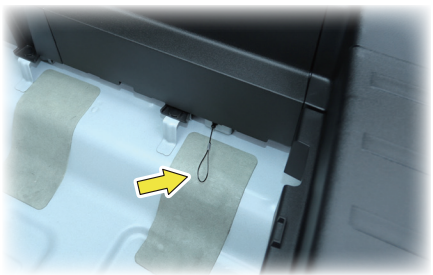
9. When the charging pile is set to end charging, or charging has been completed, the charging pile will automatically end charging;
10. Unplug the charging pile by pressing the drop-proof button on the charging plug at the charging pile end;
11. Properly place the charging equipment of the charging pile;
12. Close the charging port lid and charging port cover;
13. The AC charging with charging pile ends.

**Caution**

After charging is stopped, the operating interval between the charging plug unplugging and the later plugging for charging should be ≥ 3 seconds.

## Emergency unlocking of AC charging connector

When the AC charging port unlocking button malfunctions and the plug cannot be pulled out, the charging port unlocking cable on the right inner side of the trunk can be used for emergency unlocking.



Open the tailgate and remove the foam pad (if present). Then, the emergency unlocking pull cord can be seen on the right side of the trunk. You can pull this pull cord for unlocking.

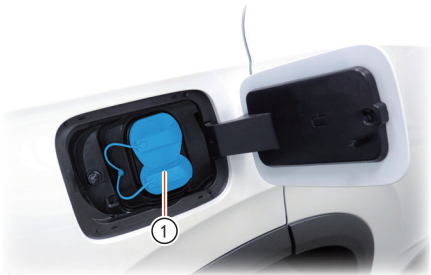
**Notice**

- After unlocking the vehicle with the emergency unlocking pull cord, the cord should be restored immediately; otherwise, it may cause subsequent malfunctions such as failure to charge.
- The emergency unlocking pull cord is for emergency use only. Prolonged use of the emergency unlocking pull cord may result in the AC charging port unlocking failure.

## Mode 3: DC fast charging

Connect the vehicle to the DC charging pile of the charging station via the charging cable to realize DC charging.

The detailed charging method is as follows:




1. Before charging, make sure that the high voltage connection on the vehicle is not faulty;
2. With the drive motor turned off and the vehicle unlocked, when you press the rear of the DC charging port cover, the DC charging port cover unlocks and pops open;
3. Remove the charging port lid (1) and connect the charging plug;
4. The charging operation is carried out according to the instructions on the Dongfeng Aeolus App, and the charging service can be set according to the charging capacity, charging time, charging amount, etc.;
5. When charging starts, the charging cable connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the charging reminder indicator and the power bar flash;

6. When charging is completed, the charging reminder indicator stops flashing and remains on and the power bar stops flashing;
7. End of charging: disconnect the charging plug, press the drop-proof button (2) to unlock the charging cable connector, and place it in the charger storage site;
8. Close the charging port lid and charging port cover;
9. The DC charging ends.

**Notice**

- During charging, the charging plug will be locked. In this case, do not pull out the charging plug forcibly to avoid damaging the electrical interface.
- During charging, if it is necessary to disconnect the charging plug, you should first stop charging through the charging pile and disable the electronic lock at the charging plug end.

**Warning**

It is recommended to use the special charging equipment for electric vehicles provided by Dongfeng Motor Corporation:

- It is strictly prohibited to modify, disassemble or repair the charging equipment.
- It is strictly prohibited to use additional wires or adapters.
- Stop charging immediately when charging fails or when there is any abnormality.
- Do not touch the plug with water on your hands.
- Do not touch the charging plug pins or the vehicle charging socket.
- Charging must be done at the rated voltage.
- It is strictly prohibited to use the equipment if the three-phase plug wire is soft, the charging plug cable is worn, the insulation layer is cracked or damaged in any other way.
- It is strictly prohibited to use the equipment if the protective packaging or the vehicle charging port is disconnected, cracked or opened, or there is any damage at the surface.
- It is strictly forbidden to allow minors to touch or use the equipment, and to keep minors out of the way while it is in use.
- Max. operating temperature: 50°C.
- Never allow it to be near heat sources or heat generating electronic devices during charging.

## Charging energy management

On the "Energy Center" interface of the CSD, you can view and set the charging status.

Tap the "Energy Center" icon on All Apps interface of the CSD to enter the Energy Center interface. Click "Charge" to enter the Energy Center - Charging interface, where the charge status can be viewed.

## Charging fault diagnosis

| Faulty status | Possible causes | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| Unable to charge (physical connection completed, charging has been initiated) | The high voltage battery is fully charged | When the high voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will automatically stop |
| | The temperature of the high voltage battery is lower than -20°C or higher than 45°C. | Allow the high voltage battery to be heated or cooled before charging, place the vehicle in an environment with suitable temperature, and charge the vehicle after the temperature is normalized |
| | Excessive discharge of 12V auto-starting battery | The 12V auto-starting battery will be charged when the vehicle is started by connecting the 12V power supply from other vehicles. |
| | The 220V 50Hz 10A/16A standard single-phase two-pole grounding socket has no power. | Check if the power supply is in the overload protection state, and if so, use a dedicated charging power supply, namely 220V 50Hz 10A/16A standard single-phase two-pole grounding socket. |
| | Faulty vehicle or AC charging connection | It is recommended to contact an authorized dealer for inspection. |
| | Charging pile or vehicle display failure | 1. In case of vehicle charging malfunction, it is recommended to contact an authorized dealer for overhaul;<br>2. If the charging pile shows a fault, stop charging. |
| Charging stops when charging is underway | Power disconnection | Charging will automatically restart after power is restored |
| | Charging cable is not connected properly | Make sure the charging connection cable is correctly connected |
| | Power battery temperature too high | Wait for the battery to cool down before charging |
| | Vehicle or charging pile malfunction | 1. In case of vehicle charging malfunction, it is recommended to contact an authorized dealer for overhaul;<br>2. If the charging pile shows a fault, stop charging. |

## Charging method

Use the self-purchased power strip discharge connection device for vehicle discharge, with the maximum discharge power of 3.3kW and the discharge voltage of 220V.

Vehicle-to-power strip discharge connection device: a power strip allows the vehicle to power electrical appliances, such as mobile phones and computers.

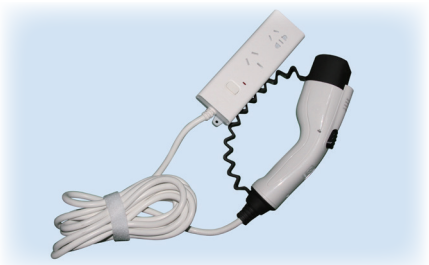
**Notice**

- When the vehicle is discharged outwards using the power strip discharge connection device, the vehicle may be started due to a low battery level.
- It is recommended to unplug the electric consumers when they are not being used to avoid high static power consumption.
- Before using the vehicle for outward discharge, the vehicle high voltage system should be tested; otherwise, it may affect the discharge response speed.
- Before using the vehicle for outward discharge, make sure that the power of the external electrical appliances is less than 3.3 kW. For some electrical appliances with high starting power (e.g. A/C), the over-power protection of the vehicle discharge function may be triggered at the time of startup, resulting in abnormal discharge function.

**Caution**

- Please use this function when the traction battery capacity is sufficient.

### Inspection before discharging

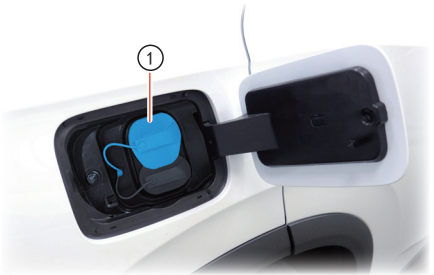


Please purchase your own power strip discharge connection device and make sure that the discharge equipment is not scratched, rusted or cracked, or has no other abnormalities such as broken surfaces on the muzzle, cables, sockets, or wires.

Stop discharging if the surface of the socket is damaged, rusted, cracked or the connection is too loose.

When the plug is dirty or wet, cut off the power, and then wipe the plug with dry, clean cloth to ensure that the discharge plug is dry and clean.

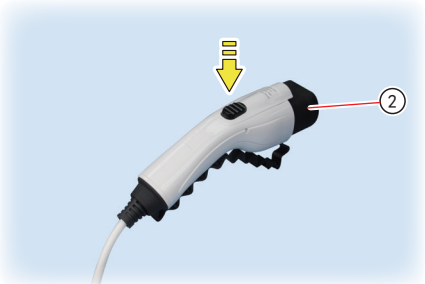
### Activating discharge function



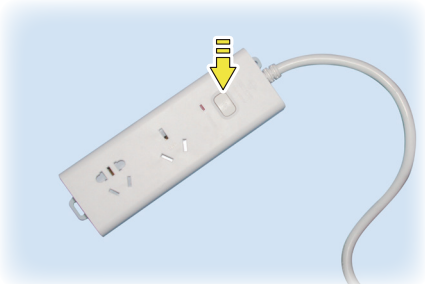

1. Before discharging, make sure that there is no fault in the high voltage connection of the vehicle, and switch the vehicle power to "ON" mode;
2. Unlock the vehicle and press the rear of the charging port cover cap to open the charging port cover cap;
3. Remove the AC charging port lid (1);

**Notice**

- In order to prevent the electric charging port cover cap from malfunctioning, do not open and close the cap continuously.




1. Press the lock button on the discharging cable connector to remove the protective cover (2);
2. Insert the discharge plug into the vehicle discharge socket until a click is heard;



3. Press the switch on the discharge socket and wait for a few seconds until the socket indicator light goes on permanently (red). This indicates that the socket is ready for use.

**⚠ Warning**

- It is strictly prohibited to use the function if the protective packaging or the discharge port is disconnected, cracked or opened, or there is any damage at the surface.
- It is strictly forbidden to allow minors to touch or use the equipment, and to keep minors out of the way while it is in use.
- Stop using the equipment immediately if there is any abnormality in the discharge.
- Do not touch the plug with water on your hands.
- Never touch the discharge plug pins or the vehicle discharge socket.
- It is strictly prohibited to use the equipment if the three-phase plug wire is soft, the discharge plug cable is worn, the insulation layer is cracked or damaged in any other way.
- When using the vehicle for discharge, it is strictly prohibited to place the power strip in a wet environment to avoid rainwater falling onto the device.

# Discharge of vehicle

## Deactivating discharge function

1. Unplug the electric consumers from the socket, and press the switch button to let the socket indicator light go out;
2. Press and hold the drop-proof button to unlock the charging cable connector, disengage the generating cable connector and cover it with the protective cover, and place the discharging equipment in the shelf under the trunk properly;
3. Close the charging port lid and charging port cover.

**Caution**

- After discharging is stopped, the operating interval between the discharge plug unplugging and the later plugging for discharging should be ≥ 3 seconds.

## Discharge fault diagnosis

Possible reasons for vehicle discharge failure:

- The temperature of the high voltage battery is lower than -20°C or higher than 45°C. As a result, it is necessary to allow the high voltage battery to be heated or cooled before discharging, place the vehicle in an environment with suitable temperature, and discharge the vehicle after the temperature is normalized
- The high voltage battery is low.

## Discharge function setting

On the "Energy Center" interface of the CSD, you can view and set the discharging status.

Tap the "Energy Center" icon on All Apps interface of the CSD to enter the Energy Center interface. Click "Charge" to enter the Energy Center - Charging interface where you can view the discharge status.

# Driver seat

## Electric adjustment*

### Electric switch control*

The power seat is adjustable in six directions (including longitudinal adjustment, vertical adjustment and reclining), but only the adjustment in one direction is allowed at a time.




### Seat forward/backward adjustment

**Moving forward:** Push the switch ① forward;

**Moving backward:** Push the switch ① backward.

The longitudinal adjustment travel of seat is about 240mm, with 220mm for forward adjustment, and 20mm for backward adjustment.

### Seat height adjustment

**Up:** Lift up the rear end of the switch ①;

**Down:** Press down the rear end of the switch ①.

### Seat backrest reclining angle adjustment

Inclining forward: Move the upper end of the switch ② forward;

Inclining backward: Move the upper end of switch ② backward.

The designed reclining angle of the seat backrest is 22°.

**Notice**

- Recline the seat backrest so that it is almost in a vertical position.
- When moving the seat backward, make sure that there are no objects under or after seat or in the foot room after the seat, so as to prevent crush injury to rear passengers or objects after the seat.
- Keep the seating position as far as possible from the instrument panel, provided the driving and seating requirements are met;

### CSD soft switch control*

Tap "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Seat Position" to enter the seat position function operation setting interface:




① Tap to exit the Vehicle Center and automatically save the current settings;

② Tap ▲ or ▼ to raise or lower the seat backrest;

③ Tap ▲ or ▼ to raise or lower the seat;

④ Tap ◀ or ▶ to move the seat forward or backward.

## Manual adjustment*




### Seat forward/backward adjustment

Pull up the lever ① under the seat to move the seat forwards or backwards, and release the lever to lock it at the desired position:

`Forward adjustment`: Pull up the lever and move the seat forward;

`Backward adjustment`: Pull up the lever and move the seat backward.

After the seat is adjusted, gently move the seat forward and backward several times to ensure the seat is locked securely.

The forward/backward adjustment travel of seat is about 240mm, with 220mm for forward adjustment, and 20mm for backward adjustment.

### Seat height adjustment

**Up:** Pull up the handle ② repeatedly;

**Down:** Press down the handle ② repeatedly.

### Seat backrest reclining angle adjustment

Pull up the handle ③ to adjust the reclining angle of seat backrest, and release the handle to lock the seat backrest at the desired reclining angle, The designed reclining angle of the seat backrest is 22°:

**Reclining forward:** Pull up the handle, shake the seat backrest and tilt it forward;

**Reclining backward:** Pull up the handle, shake the seat backrest and tilt it backward.

**⚠ Warning**

After the seat is adjusted, move it forward and backward several times to ensure that the seat is locked securely. If it is not properly locked, the seat may move unexpectedly during driving, resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.

## Front passenger seat

The front passenger seat supports manual/electric 4-way adjustment: Forward/backward position and seat backrest inclination angle. Forward/backward adjustment method and backrest reclining angle adjustment method of the front passenger electric seat are the same as those of driver seat.

## Heating and ventilation function of front seat*

After entering the A/C/seat control interface, you can tap the "Seat" icon to enter the seat control interface:




① Driver seat ventilation activation and gear adjustment

② Driver seat heating activation and gear adjustment

③ Front passenger seat heating activation and gear adjustment

④ One-click shutdown of seat ventilation, heating and massage

If you need to exit the seat control interface, you can tap the icon in the bottom status bar of the interface to return to the homepage or go to other function menus.

**ℹ Caution**

When a button is highlighted on the CSD or the button indicator is illuminated, it indicates that this button function is turned on.

### Seat ventilation control*




Tap the driver seat ventilation/front passenger seat ventilation icon on the interface to pop up the seat ventilation function setting bar (OFF - OFF, low gear, medium gear, high gear).

Tap the icon to enter the corresponding operating mode.

### Seat heating control*




Tap the driver seat heating/front passenger seat heating icon on the interface to pop up the seat heating function setting bar (OFF - OFF, low gear, medium gear, high gear).

Tap the icon to enter the corresponding operating mode.

## Welcome and memory function of driver seat*

The driver seat is equipped with an optional driving position memory function, which can provide the function of seat welcome and automatic adjustment of the driving position.

### Driver seat welcome function*

The driver seat moves backward when the driver seat is in the driving position, the vehicle power supply is in "OFF" mode and the driver door is opened.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when any of the following operations are performed:

- Switch the vehicle power supply to "ON" mode and close the doors.

### Welcome function setting

Tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Usage Preference" - "Active Welcome" slider on the CSD to turn on/off the driver seat welcome function.

### Driver seat memory function*

The driver seat position will be memorized when you do the followings:

1. Switch the gear to "P" and vehicle power supply to "ON" mode;
2. Adjust the seat position using the soft switch in the CSD or the driver seat adjustment switch.

### Setting memory position with CSD soft switch

- Tap "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Seat Position" bar on the CSD to enter the seat adjustment interface;
- In the seat adjustment interface, select the driver seat, and then use the seat adjustment button on the interface to adjust the seat to a suitable position;
- After adjustment, tap the Save button at the upper right corner of the seat adjustment interface, select the storage location in the pop-up window interface, and edit the exclusive seat name.

### Setting the memory position with adjustment switch

- Use the driver seat adjustment switch to adjust the seat position;
- After adjusting, wait for 3s, select the storage position in the pop-up window interface of CSD, and edit the exclusive seat name.

### Driver seat memory position call-up

When any of the following operations is performed, the automatic driving position adjustment function is activated. At this moment, the driver seat and rearview mirrors are aadjusted to the memorized position:

- Switch the gear to "P" and vehicle power supply to "ON" mode, and trigger the FACE ID linkage function to call the memory position;
- Switch the gear to "P" and vehicle power supply to "ON" mode, and tap to call the memorized position in the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Seat Position" interface of the CSD.

The automatic driving position and rearview mirror angle auto adjustment system does not work or stops operating in the following cases:

- Vehicle speed is above 7km/h;
- The position memory storage function is not set successfully.
- The automatic adjustment system for driving position and rearview mirror angle stops working in the following cases:
- The auto adjustment function of driver position is interrupted by other operations (e.g. by tapping the "Resume" icon on the seat adjustment interface of the CSD), or the drive seat is adjusted;
- Start the vehicle during automatic adjustment of driving position.

### Setting rearview mirror angle memory position*

Memorize the rearview mirror angle when you do the followings:

- Switch the vehicle power supply to "ON" and switch the gear to "P";
- Tap "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Rearview Mirror" icon in the CSD to enter the rearview mirror adjustment interface;
- In the rearview mirror adjustment interface, adjust the angle of the rearview mirror to a suitable position;
- After the adjustment, you can set the exclusive seat in this interface.

## Rear seats

### Rear seat central armrest*



Pull the pull strap on the armrest in the center of the rear seat backrest to the lowest position to use the middle armrest of the rear seat.

## Rear seat folding

The rear seats can be split and folded in a 6:4 ratio, or all the rear seats can be folded to expand the trunk capacity.

**Notice**

- After restoring the seat backrests, push the rear seat backrests back and forth to make sure they are securely locked.
- When restoring the seats, place the seat belts on both sides to prevent them from being pinched into the seats.

### Rear seat folding procedure



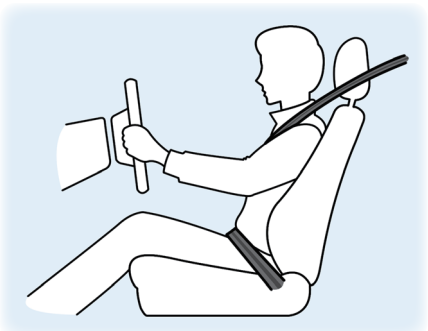
1. Move the front seats forward to the limit position.
2. Pull the upper locking puller on the outside of the front seat backrest upward to the limit (in the direction of the arrow in the figure) while pulling the seat backrest toward the front of the vehicle;



3. Move the seat belt to the side non-interference position and flip the rear seat backrest to the lowest position by flipping the rear seat backrest to the front;
4. Repeat steps 1, 2, 3 to complete the folding of the rear seat on the other side.

## Seat belts

### Fastening seat belts properly



Seat belt shall act on body skeleton. For this purpose, the upper part of the seat belt shall fit closely with prothorax and cross over the shoulder, and the lower part of the seat belt shall fit closely with the hip pelvis and exerts no stress on abdomen.

**Notice**

- Before fastening the seat belt, adjust the seat as appropriate.
- Tension the seat belt as much as possible, and if the seat belt is under-tensioned, its protection effect on users will be greatly reduced.

## Front seat belts

The front seat belts are three-point belts. Also, the driver seat and some front passenger seats are designed with seat belt reminder function.

### Locking seat belt



Pull out the seat belt from the retractor gradually, insert the latch plate into the buckle until a "click" is heard, and pull the seat belt back to check if it is reliably locked.

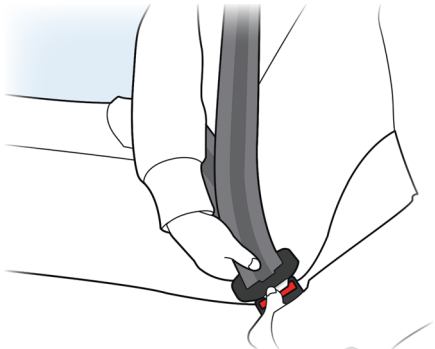
### Seat belt adjustment



The length of seat belt can be adjusted by pulling it gently, so that drivers and passengers can adjust the seat belt as desired in the seating position.

Pull down the lower part of seat belt to let it cross the hip as far as possible, and then pull up the upper part of seat belt to fit the lower part of seat belt closely with your body. so that the impact will be mainly transmitted to the strong basin of human body and the probability of abdomen injury will be minimized.

### Unfastening seat belt



To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle, and after the seat belt is unlocked, push the seat belt properly toward the upper anchorage to allow the seat belt to automatically retract into the retractor.

## Rear seat belts

The rear seats are equipped with three 3-point seat belts, and some rear seats have seat belt reminder function.

### Wearing rear left/right seat belt




The fastening method of the rear seat belts is the same as that of the front seat belts.

Pay attention during use that the latch plate of rear center seat belt can only be inserted into the buckle with "CENTER" marking, and if wrongly paired, the center seat belt will not be well locked in the buckle.

**Notice**

If the seat belt latch plate is mistakenly snapped into the buckle of another seat, the riding position will be too far away from the seat belt buckle. In the event of a serious crash, the seat belt may move up to the occupant's abdomen, causing the seat belt acting force to be applied to the abdomen rather than the hip bones, which could result in serious injury.

## Child safety

Children are not allowed to drive the vehicle without the attendance of an adult. Please select an appropriate child restraint system according to the body size of the child.

**Warning**

- Before driving, be sure to get the child restrained by the child restraint system. Otherwise in the event of an accident or emergency stop, the child may be seriously injured.
- Prevent the child from getting off the child restraint system and standing on the floor during driving.
- Prevent the child from getting off the child restraint system and kneeling on the seat during driving.

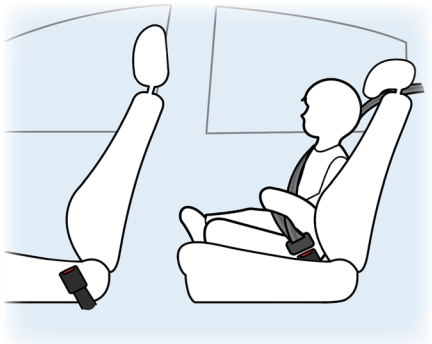
### Infants and young children

A child restraint system shall be used for baby passengers. Please select an appropriate child restraint system, and install and use it as per the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

**Warning**

Special protections shall be taken on babies and infants. The onboard seat belts are not suitable for them, and therefore appropriate child restraint systems shall be used.

### Elder children

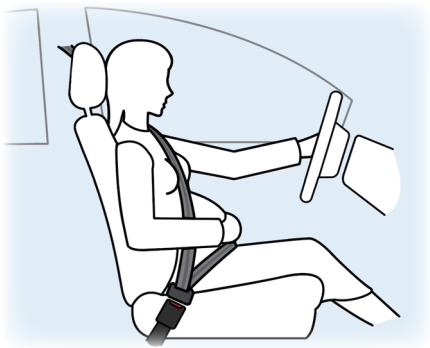


The elder children may be protected by the seat belt directly, and if the upper part of the seat is located on or too close to the child's face or neck, a booster seat (available on the market) which is compatible with the vehicle seat can be installed to raise the child so that the upper part of the seat belt just crosses the middle of the shoulder and the lower part is relatively lowered to the hip.

Children who are taller than 1.5 meters can directly use the seat belts supplied with the vehicle.

## Recommendations for pregnant women and special occupants

### Pregnant women



For a pregnant woman, the best way to protect her and her fetus is to fasten the seat belt properly during driving or riding, with the lap belt across the hip as low as possible.

Before driving the vehicle, move the seat backward as far as possible provided a good vehicle control is ensured.

During each prenatal examination, ask the doctor for suggestions if the healthy condition still allows for driving.

When taking the front passenger seat, it is also recommended to move the seat backward as far as possible to minimize the risk of injury by airbag if deployed.

### Disabled persons

Disabled persons are required to fasten the seat belts when staying in the vehicle. Please consult the doctor for professional suggestions.

## Seat belt pretentioner function*

The pre-tensioner and force limiter seat belt acts together wit the frontal airbag. In case of accidents, the pre-tightener quickly tightens the seat belt and stably binds the occupants to the seats. If the tightening force of the seat belt exceeds a certain limit, the force limiter will loosen the seat belt appropriately to relieve the pressure on the occupants' chest and prevent the occupants from being injured by excessive binding forces, thus improving the protective effect.

**i Caution**

When the pre-tensioner is triggered, it is normal to hear a loud sound with smoke. However, smoke inhalation shall be avoided as far as possible, otherwise it may stimulate the respiratory tract and induce asphyxia for patients with respiratory diseases. Leave the vehicle immediately and go to a place with fresh air.

**⚠ Warning**

- All passengers in the vehicle are required to fasten the seat belt when the vehicle is running. For children, please select appropriate child restraint system, and install it to either of the outboard rear seats.
- Ensure that the upper part of the seat belt fits closely with and crosses over the shoulder and chest, and do not put it across the back or under the arm. When laying the seat belt through the shoulder, bypass the face and neck but ensure that the seat belt will not slip off from the shoulder. If the seat belt is not fastened properly, serious injury may ensue.
- If the seat belt is placed under the arm, serious personal injury may be caused, because in the event of a collision, the body of passenger may move forward excessively, increasing the possibility of injury to the head and neck, and most stress of the seat belt will act on the rib on one side and thereby causes injury.
- Never twine the seat belt during use. Otherwise, the stress exerted by the seat belt on the human body will increase, reducing the protection effect of seat belt.
- Never insert a substitute of latch plate into the buckle to eliminate the seat belt reminder alarm.

- Never allow more than one passenger to share a seat belt, as one seat belt is intended for use by one passenger only. If the seat belt is fastened on the child sitting on the passenger's leg, serious injury may be caused in the event of a collision.
- The body size of children is too small to use the seat belt of vehicle, as the upper part of seat belt is too close to the head and neck, and thus it can not protect the child effectively and may even cause serious injury to the child in the event of an accident. Therefore, always use the booster seat or child restraint system suitable for child's body size and seat.
- Never modify the seat belt in any way. Otherwise, effective retraction of the slack belt will be impeded.
- Replace the seat belt in case of wear or damage of webbing.
- After collision, please go to an authorized dealer to check all seat belt assemblies, including retractors and locking fasteners. Replace it if necessary.
- Once the seat belt pre-tensioner works, it cannot be used again, and the seat belt assembly shall be replaced. Please go to an authorized dealer for replacement and installation of the seat belt system components.

**⚠ Warning**

- The pre-tensioner seat belt cannot be used again after it works and must be replaced together with the retractor and buckle.
- If the pre-tensioner did not work in an accident, please check the pre-tensioner system in an authorized dealer and replace it if necessary.
- Do not modify the component or wiring of the pre-tensioner seat belt to prevent the accidental detonation of pretensioner and pretensioner seat belt damage.
- The pre-tensioner seat belt and its accessories shall be maintained by an authorized dealer. Do not modify or disconnect the wiring of supplemental restraint system (SRS). Unapproved electrical testing equipment and detection instruments shall not be used on the pretensioner seat belt system, which may cause the accidental detonation of pretensioner. If the pre-tensioner seat belts need to be disposed of, or the vehicle is scrapped, please contact an authorized dealer. Incorrect handling procedures may result in personal injury.

## Inspection of seat belt reliability

The seat belt retractor will lock the seat belt when:

- The seat belt is pulled out from the retractor rapidly;
- The vehicle is decelerating rapidly;
- The seat belt retractor inclines excessively.

To check the reliability of the seat belt, hold the shoulder belt and pull it quickly to check if the retractor can lock the seat belt. Otherwise, check or repair the seat belt at an authorized dealer.

## Maintenance of seat belts

Regularly check whether the seat belt and all its components (such as buckles, locking tongues, retractors, webbing, and seat belt height adjustment devices) are working properly.

If seat belt component damage, webbing crack or other damage is found, replace the entire seat belt assembly. Any dirt on the guide ring of the upper part of seat belt will reduce the retracting speed of seat belt. If this occurs, please wipe it clean with a piece of clean dry cloth.

Use neutral soap or solution suitable for cleaning interior trims and carpets to clean the seat belt webbing, and after cleaning, dry it naturally. Never get the seat belt retracted before it is completely dry for fear of retractor damage.

## Maintenance and scrapping of seat belts

In case of any of the following circumstances, please go to an authorized dealer for inspection and repair as soon as possible:

- A frontal collision occurs but the seat belt pretensioner does not work.
- The seat belt retractor and its peripheral parts are scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

Please go to an authorized dealer for seat belt inspection and repair.

If the seat belt retractor needs to be scrapped, the relevant safety regulations must be observed. Please go to an authorized dealer for inquiry service.

# Supplement Restraint System (SRS)

## Introduction to supplement restraint system (SRS)

The supplemental restraint system contains important information about the frontal airbags, side airbags and side curtain airbags*, so be sure to read them carefully before driving the vehicle.

The installation position of airbag can be identified by the symbol "AIRBAG". Airbags only play as an assistance in protecting passengers who fasten seat belts correctly, but in no case can it replace the seat belt.

Not all airbags will deploy in an accident, and the airbags in different positions are independent of each other.

**⚠ Warning**

If the seating posture is incorrect, the airbag may not function for protection as expected, and may cause injury when deployed, increasing the risk of personal injury or even death. In order to avoid dangerous situations, the driver and all passengers shall:

- Wear seat belts correctly, including pregnant women.
- Sit correctly and as far away from the airbag as possible.
- Always ensure that there is no object between the airbag and the driver/passenger.

### Frontal airbag

The driver's frontal airbag is located in the middle of steering wheel. The passenger frontal airbag is located in the instrument panel in front of the front passenger.

The frontal airbag inflates and deploys in case of a violent frontal collision, or a collision similar to the frontal collision (such as bumping into a ditch in a road). The damage (or obvious damage) of vehicle is not a sufficient condition for deployment of frontal airbag.

The frontal airbag can help reduce the impact on the faces and chests of the driver and front passenger in some frontal collisions.

### Side airbag*

Side airbag is located at the outboard side of front passenger seat backrest.

The side airbag can help mitigate the injury to driver and front passenger in some side collisions. When the vehicle incurs a lateral collision, the side airbag at the side where collision occurs might deploy.

**⚠ Warning**

When installing the seat covering, do not cover the side airbag on the outboard side of the seat backrest. Otherwise the inflation and deployment of the side airbag* will be affected.

### Side curtain airbags*

The side curtain airbags are located at the longitudinal beams on both sides of the vehicle ceiling.

This airbag helps reduce the side impact force on the heads of the driver, front passenger, and rear passenger in certain side impacts. When the vehicle is subjected to a side impact, the curtain airbag on the impacted side may deploy.

**Notice**

The inflation and deflation of the airbag are completed in a very short time, and the airbag works only once, that is, once deployed, it can no longer work for protection again upon the second collision.

- Dust generated during airbag deployment will cause irritation to skin and eyes, and even aggravate asthma. Therefore, when the airbag is deployed in an accident, thoroughly wash all exposed skin with clean water and warm soap.
- After the airbag is inflated, many parts of the supplemental restraint system will become very hot. Therefore, do not touch any of them for fear of scalding.
- Adjust the seat correctly before driving. Always ensure that the seat is in a nearly vertical position, and the contact point of the center of the headrest with your head flush with the center of your ear.

**Notice**

- Move the driver seat and front passenger seat backward as far as possible. But for driver's seat, the seating position shall be such adjusted that safe driving is ensured.
- Hold the outer ring of the steering wheel only, so as to allow the airbag to deploy fully.
- Always lean your back against the seat backrest while the vehicle is running. Neither lean forward, nor lean against the door or side window. Otherwise, your body may be in the deployment area of the airbag.
- Always place your feet in the foot rest area in front of the seat instead of on the instrument panel or other places. Otherwise, your feet may be in the deployment area of the airbag.
- For passengers with height less than 1.50m, the seat belt may be unable to be fastened in a proper way, and another appropriate restraint system shall be used to protect passengers under 1.50 meters in height.
- In some side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or minor frontal collision, the frontal airbag may not deploy. Therefore, always fasten the seat belt to mitigate the risk of injuries in different accidents.
- In frontal collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or minor side collisions, the side airbag* and the side curtain airbag seldom deploy. Therefore, always fasten the seat belt to mitigate the risk of injuries in different accidents.
- Side curtain airbags* provide additional protection only in the event of a severe side impact, which do not replace the role of seat belts.
- To ensure that the side curtain airbags* deploy properly, there must be no obstructions between the side curtain airbags* and the occupants.

Before driving, in order to avoid the risk of injury resulted from high-speed deployment of airbag, ensure that:

- There are no personnel, animals or articles between driver/passenger and the airbag.
- There are no hard objects on the handle or coat rack, such as clothes hanger.
- There are no objects between the seat and the door/B-pillar.
- There are no accessories (such as a cup holder) in the deployment area of airbag.
- There are no heavy, sharp or fragile objects in the pocket of driver or passenger.

## Precautions for SRS

### Recommendations for effective use of airbags

To ensure the effective functioning of airbag, it is recommended to:

- Fasten the seat belt well.
- Do not fix or stick anything on the airbag cover in the center of steering wheel and on the instrument panel where the passenger airbag is located, as this may impede the normal deployment of airbag or cause injury to the concerning occupant when the airbag deploys;
- Do not place anything between human body and airbag;
- Do not grasp the steering wheel spoke or put hands on the central airbag cover while driving;
- Do not smoke during driving (which may pose risk of scalding or injury when the airbag deploys);
- Do place feet on the instrument panel when the vehicle is running;
- Restrain the children in the child restraint system installed on either of the two outboard rear seats.

## Precautions for SRS

The protection effect of supplemental restraint system (SRS) for short person is lower than normal case. Always fasten the seat belt properly, and always keep a certain distance from the steering wheel, instrument panel and door components.

SRS only plays as an assistance for protection, and in no case can it replace the seat belt in the accident. However, airbag may also cause skin scaling or other injuries.

In order to provide timely protection for occupants, the airbag will deploy rapidly, and if any occupant stays too close to or lean against the airbag, the inflation and deployment force of airbag will increase the risk of personal injury. The airbag will deflate quickly after inflation.

SRS can only operate when the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode.

**⚠ Warning**

- When the airbag deploys, a loud noise and smoke will be produced. Such smoke, through non-toxic and not constituting a fire, shall be avoided from being inhaled, as it will irritate the respiratory tract of patients with respiratory disease and induce asphyxia. Leave the vehicle immediately and go to a place with fresh air.
- In some side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or minor frontal collision, the frontal airbag may not deploy. Therefore, always fasten the seat belt to mitigate the risk of injuries in different accidents.
- In frontal collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or minor side collisions, the side airbag* and the side curtain airbag seldom deploy. Therefore, always fasten the seat belt to mitigate the risk of injuries in different accidents.
- After the airbag is inflated, many parts of the supplemental restraint system will become very hot. Therefore, do not touch any of them for fear of scalding.

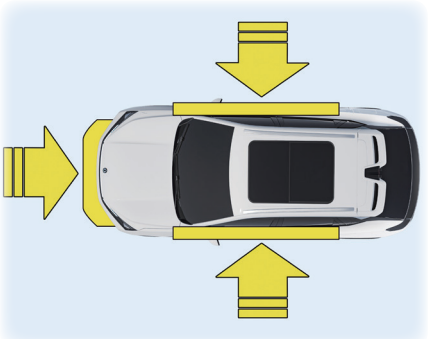
**⚠ Warning**

- Do not place any object between the passenger and steering wheel, on the instrument panel or near front door trim and front passenger seat. Otherwise, the object will be thrown out in the process of airbag deployment, posing risk of injury to passengers.
- Never modify any SRS component or circuit, so as to prevent accidental deployment of airbag or damage of SRS.
- Do not modify the electrical system, suspension system, front structure and side roof of this vehicle. Otherwise, SRS may not work normally.
- The SRS and its surrounding parts shall be repaired by an authorized dealer. Do not modify or cut off the SRS circuit.
- Only when the driver is far enough away from the steering wheel can the frontal airbag play its full protection role.

- If the driver is too close to the steering wheel, the frontal airbag may fail to play for protection, but may even cause fatal injury. Therefore, the driver is required to lean against the seat backrest, and keep the chest far enough away from the steering wheel.
- The driver shall not put his hand out of the window or lean against the door. Otherwise, in the event of a lateral collision, serious or even fatal injury may be caused when the side airbag* and side curtain airbag are deployed.
- The front passenger shall not be too close to the instrument panel. Otherwise serious or even fatal injury may be caused when the frontal airbag deploys. Therefore, the front passenger is required to lean against the seat backrest, and keep the chest far enough away from the instrument panel.
- Prevent the children from putting their hands or heads out of the window. Otherwise, serious or even fatal injury may be caused when the frontal airbag deploys in the event of a collision.

- Prevent the children stretching their heads, hands, feet or faces to the front passenger frontal airbag. Otherwise, serious or even fatal injury may be caused when the frontal airbag deploys in the event of a frontal collision.
- Prevent any passenger from stretching the hands, feet or face to the side airbag* and side curtain airbag near the outboard side of front seat backrest. Otherwise, serious injury may be caused when the side airbag* and side curtain airbag are deployed.
- Prevent children from siting on thighs of any passenger or being held in the passenger arms. Otherwise, in the event of a collision, the children will be thrown to the instrument panel, and serious or even fatal injury may be caused when the frontal airbag deploys.
- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, in the event of a collision, the child restraint system may be impacted when the front passenger frontal airbag deploys, causing serious injury or even death of the child.

## Collision monitoring area



In the event of a collision, the SRS, according to the angle and strength of frontal/lateral collision detected by the impact sensor in the collision area (as shown above), determines whether the conditions to deploy the airbag are met, and controls the frontal airbag*, side curtain and side curtain airbag* to deploy accordingly.

## Conditions for airbag to deploy

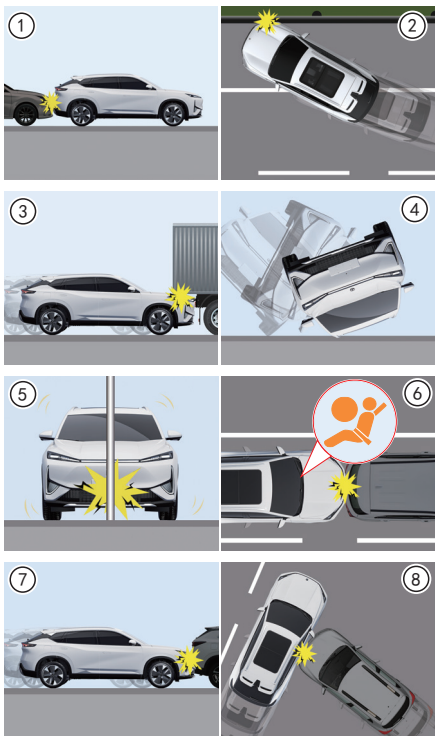
Conditions for airbag to deploy include:

- Power supply is normal. If the power supply of the vehicle is turned off before the collision, the airbag cannot be inflated for deploying.
- The collision of vehicle is in the same direction of deceleration detected by the impact sensor;
- The deceleration detected by the sensor meets the airbag deployment conditions.

**Notice**

- The deployment of the airbag depends only on the vehicle deceleration of corresponding direction caused by collision, and is unrelated with degree of deformation and damage of vehicle and the degree of personal injury after the collision.
- The national crash test is such that the vehicle runs to a non-deformable stationary barrier at a speed of 50km/h and the frontal airbag deploys.

## Conditions in which airbag may not deploy




The frontal airbag*, side curtain and side curtain airbag* may not deploy in the following cases:

① Rear-end collision by another vehicle or rear-end impact;

② Collision with road guardrail or the other vehicle at a certain offset angle.

③ Collision to the rear end of a large truck;

④ Rollover;

⑤ Collision with some thinner objects such as utility poles or trees, etc.;

⑥ Overdue repair after the SRS fault alarm is activated;

⑦ Collision to rear end of another vehicle traveling in the same direction.

The frontal airbag may not deploy but the side airbag* and side curtain airbag* may deploy in the following cases:

⑧ Collision at the side of cabin.

**Notice**

When the SRS fault warning light is illuminated, go to an authorized dealer for inspection or repair as soon as possible.

## SRS fault alarm

The SRS fault warning light is displayed as on the instrument cluster to monitor the frontal airbag, side airbag, side curtain airbag*, impact sensor, pre-tensioner seat belt system*, SRS fault warning light and collision output signal, as well as to diagnose the frontal airbag module, side airbag module, side curtain airbag module*, impact sensor, pre-tensioner seat belt*, fault warning light, collision output signal, and all related circuits.

When the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode, the SRS fault warning light will be illuminated, and if the system is normal, the light will go out after about 6 seconds.

However, if:

- The SRS fault warning light stays on after 6s.
- The SRS fault warning light flashes intermittently.
- The SRS fault warning light does not illuminated.

It indicates that the supplemental restraint system (SRS), including frontal airbag module, side airbag module, side curtain airbag*, impact sensor, pre-tensioner seat belt*, fault warning light, impact output signal and all related circuits, may be faulty and needs to be repaired or replaced. Please contact an authorized dealer immediately.

## Maintenance and scrapping of airbags

SRS components are installed in different locations of the vehicle, and any operation to the SRS or removal/installation of SRS components due to maintenance of other vehicle parts shall be carried out by professional technicians. Otherwise, the SRS may be damaged, and may deploy abnormally or does not deploy in case of an accident.

If the vehicle is to be scrapped, the airbag, if not deployed, constitutes a potential hazard, and needs to be deployed by a professional technician.

### ⚠ Warning

- The airbag, once deployed, is irreparable and needs to the replaced with a new one.
- If there is any damage to the front or side of the vehicle, have the SRS inspected by an authorized dealer.
- Do not dispose of the airbag modules, pre-tensioner modules or vehicle by yourself, which shall be disposed by professional personnel with special equipment to ensure safety. Improper disposal may result in personal injury.

For the following parts, please go to an authorized dealer for inspection and repair, so as to avoid the damage of SRS components or abnormal deployment of airbags caused by incorrect maintenance operations:

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of supplement restraint system.
- Replacement or modification of steering wheel, instrument panel, console, instrument cluster, seats or seat trims, doors, side walls or roof.
- Repair or modification of front bumper, front side member, etc.

## Child safety seat

### Child safety seat anchorage







This vehicle is equipped with 2 sets of suitable ISOFIX child seat anchorages, each consisting of 1 upper anchor support ① and 2 anchor lower supports ②.

The upper anchor support ① is located at the back of the rear seat backrest and the lower anchor support ② is located under the rear seat backrest (indicated by "ISOFIX").

The upper anchor support of security seat is not visible in the cockpit, but can be seen when the rear seats are turned over or from the trunk.

The lower anchor support of safety seat ② is located in the gaps of the seat cushion marked with "ISOFIX".

If necessary, please consult an authorized dealer or safety seat manufacturer.

For this vehicle, ISOFIX child safety seats of various specifications are applicable. Please install a child safety seat according to the Operation Instruction provided by the child safety seat manufacturer.

**ℹ Caution**

For children weighing up to 18 kg (up to 4 years of age), the Babyfirst Space Castle-Z (R102C) child seat is recommended, which shall be installed reversely; For children between 4 and 12 years of age, the Britax Römer ISIZE child seat is recommended.

**⚠ Warning**

- This vehicle only supports the installation of child safety seat on either of the two outboard rear seats.
- The child safety seat anchorage is designed for installation of child restraint system only, and in no case shall it be used for fixing other articles and equipment.
- After installation, it is required to push and pull the child safety seat in different directions to confirm that it is reliably secured.

## Child safety seat warning label




The warning label is pasted on the make-up mirror cover of front passenger sun visor, which becomes visible after the sun visor is flipped down.

A rear-facing child seat must not be placed in a seat protected by an airbag, as this could result in death or serious injury.

## Applicability of different seating positions for child restraint systems

| Weight group | Seating position (or other location) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Front passenger seat | Left/right rear seat | Rear center seat |
| Group 0: < 10kg | X | X | X |
| Group 0+: <13kg | X | U | X |
| Group I: 9-18kg | X | U | X |
| Group II: 15-25 kg | X | U | X |
| Group III: 22-36kg | X | U | X |

Note: The meanings of uppercase letters in the table are as follows:

U: Generic child restraint systems approved for this weight group are applicable.

X: This seating position is not suitable for child restraint systems of this weight group.

**⚠ Warning**

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child may be serious injured or even killed by the deployed passenger frontal airbag.

## Information on applicability of ISOFIX child safety seat for different ISOFIX positions

| Weight group | Size class | Fastening module | Seating position (or other location) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front passenger seat | Left/right rear seat | Rear center seat | Other positions |
| Carry cot | F | ISO/L1 | X | X | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | X | X | X |
| Group 0: < 10kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IL* | X | X |
| Group 0+: <13kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IL* | X | X |
| | D | ISO/R2 | X | IL* | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IL* | X | X |
| Group I: 9-18kg | D | ISO/R2 | X | IL* | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IL* | X | X |
| | B | ISO/F2 | X | IUF* | X | X |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | X | IUF* | X | X |
| | A | ISO/F3 | X | IUF* | X | X |
| Group II: 15-25 kg | | | X | IL* | X | X |
| Group III: 22-36kg | | | X | IL* | X | X |

Note 1: When the child restraint system is not marked as per ISOFIX size class (A-G), the vehicle manufacturer shall, for its applicable weight group, indicate the recommended vehicle-dedicated ISOFIX child restraint system for each seating position.

Note 2: The meanings of uppercase letters in the table are as follows:

IUF - Generic "forward-facing" ISOFIX child safety seat suitable for this weight group (fixed by top tether) are applicable.

IL - Semi-generic ISOFIX child safety seats installed in any one of the ways below are applicable:

- "Rear-facing" child safety seat secured by top tether or supporting leg;
- "Forward-facing" child safety seat secured by supporting leg;
- Infant seat secured by top tether or supporting leg.

X - The child safety seats or baby seats for the indicated weight are not applicable.

*: Be careful when installing the child safety seat with supporting leg, and please refer to the installation instructions provided by the child safety seat manufacturer. When installing the child seat, if the child seat interferes with the rear seat headrests, remove the rear seat headrests before installing the child seat.

## Precautions for use of child restraint system

It is required to use an appropriate child restraint system for babies during driving; otherwise, serious or fatal injuries may be caused.

Be sure to purchase a child restraint system that is suitable for your child and vehicle.

When selecting a child restraint system, make the child seated in it and check all adjustment functions to confirm that it is suitable for the child.

Some kinds of child restraint systems may be unable to be installed to the vehicle correctly. Please follow the manufacturer's instructions to install and use the child restraint system.

Install the child restraint system on either of the two outboard rear seats, as it is proved from accident statistics that it is safer for a child to sit in the rear seat than in the front seat.

Before installing a child restraint system, adjust the front seat properly to ensure that there is enough space available in the rear for installing the child restraint system.

After the child restraint system is installed, check if it is well fixed before use. For this purpose, please shake the system side-to-side, and try to pull it forward forcibly to check whether it is fixed reliably. The movement of the child restraint system shall be within the allowable range. If the child restraint system is not well secured, be sure to fasten it and check its fixing condition again.

Check if the child restraint system is well fixed before each use.

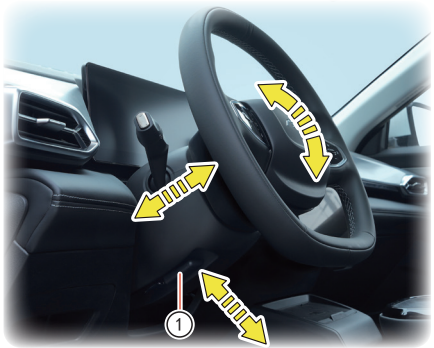
There are also various child restraint systems available for elder children. To ensure a best protection, please select an appropriate one.

On hot days, the child restraint system in confined space in the vehicle will become hot. Therefore, please check if its surface temperature is proper before use.

**⚠ Warning**

- In addition to the technical specification in this Manual, the installation and use of child safety seats shall also be subject to local regulations. The specifications in this manual are applicable to countries or regions where no special provisions are made for installation and use of child safety seats. For countries or regions which have adopted special provisions for the installation and use of child safety seats, such special provisions shall apply if conflict with the technical specifications herein is involved.
- If no child safety seat is installed at the appropriate seating position or the child safety seat installed is inappropriate, the child may not be fully protected and may be serious injured or even killed in the event of accident, emergency braking or sudden turning.

## Adjustment of steering wheel position




Release the steering wheel lock lever ① outward to unlock the steering wheel and adjust its position, so as to provide comfort and safety for the drivers in different figures. After proper adjustment, push back the steering wheel lock handle ① to lock the steering wheel. Shake the steering wheel up and down to ensure that it is completely locked.

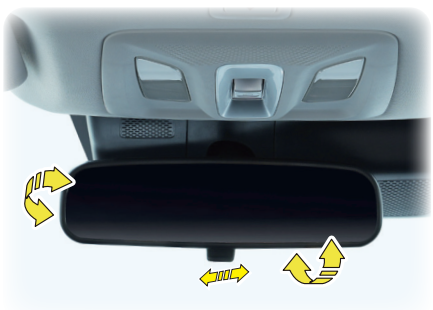
**Notice**

Do not adjust the steering wheel forcibly without releasing the lock lever, or parts may be damaged.

**Warning**

Do not adjust the steering wheel position during driving, or serious traffic accident may occur.

## Interior rearview mirror



The interior rearview mirror has anti-glare function that reduces the glare from the reflected light of the following vehicle lights. This adjustable mirror helps drivers of different heights to view the situation behind the vehicle.

Hold the interior rearview mirror, and adjust it in 4 directions as arrowed in the figure to a proper angle.

### Anti-glare function of interior rearview mirror

When driving at night, if the reflection of the rearview mirror causes the driver to dazzle, please pull the adjusting lever backward as arrowed to avoid the glare; During daytime driving, push the adjusting lever forward as arrowed to restore the rear view.

**Warning**

- Never adjust the interior rearview mirror while driving the vehicle. Please adjust the interior rearview mirror before driving in order to be able to concentrate on driving the vehicle.
- In order to ensure driving safety, please minimize the "blind spot" when adjusting the interior rearview mirror.

## Exterior rearview mirror

The mechanical exterior rearview mirrors have functions of electric adjustment, electric heating*, and electric folding*.

### Adjustment of exterior rearview mirror angle

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Rearview Mirror" icon in sequence on the CSD to pop up the rearview mirror adjustment interface, where you can adjust the exterior rearview mirror lens:

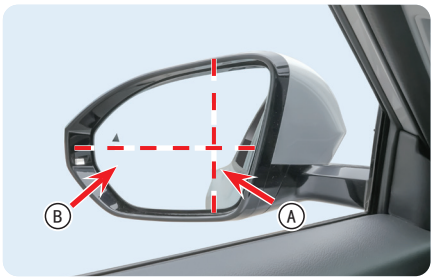



1. Press upper/lower part of the steering wheel button to adjust the upward or downward angle of the exterior rearview mirrors;
2. Press the left/right side of the steering wheel button to adjust the leftward or rightward angle of the exterior rearview mirrors;
3. After finishing the adjustment, tap the "X" icon in the upper left corner of the pop-up window to exit the rearview mirror adjustment interface.

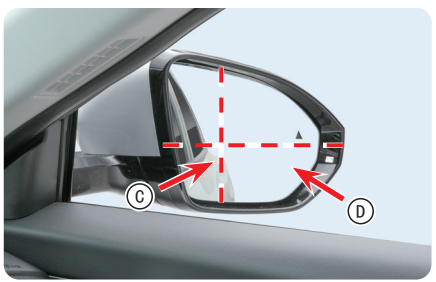
### ⚠ Warning

- Never adjust the exterior rearview mirror while driving the vehicle. Please adjust the exterior rearview mirrors before driving in order to be able to concentrate on driving the vehicle.
- Never touch the exterior rearview mirror by hand when adjusting its angle, or fingers may be hurt or the rearview mirror may be damaged.
- The image of the object displayed by the exterior rearview mirror is smaller than the real object. The distance between the object and the vehicle displayed by the exterior rearview mirror is shorter than the actual distance. Therefore, the actual distance to the vehicle or object behind must be correctly estimated.

### Recommended angles of exterior rearview mirror




**Horizontal angle:** Body Ⓐ occupies about 1/4 of the mirror surface.
**Vertical angle:** Ground Ⓑ occupies about 1/2 of the mirror surface.




**Horizontal angle:** Body Ⓒ occupies about 1/4 of the mirror surface.
**Vertical angle:** Ground Ⓓ occupies about 2/3 of the mirror surface.

## Manual folding of exterior rearview mirrors*



### Folding

Hold the exterior rearview mirror with both hands, and push it inward gently to fold it.

### Unfolding

Hold the exterior rearview mirror with both hands, and push it outward gently to unfold it.

Before driving, please be sure to unfold the exterior rearview mirrors, and observe or adjust their angles for optimum vision.

## Electric folding of exterior rearview mirrors*




When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Rearview Mirror" - "Folding"/"Unfolding" icon on the CSD to perform the folding/unfolding operation of the exterior rearview mirror.

### Folding

When you tap "Fold" icon, the exterior rearview mirrors will be folded automatically.

### Unfolding

When you tap "Unfold" icon, the exterior rearview mirrors will be unfolded automatically.

It is not recommended to fold the mirrors manually except in an exceptional case.

With the door closed, when the vehicle power supply is in "OFF" mode and the "Vehicle Center"-"Common"-"Rearview Mirror"-"Auto Folding at Vehicle Locking" function is turned on in the CSD, the electric exterior rearview mirror will be folded (unfolded) automatically if you carry the smart key with you and lock/unlock the door.

**⚠ Warning**

- Never drive the vehicle when the exterior rearview mirrors are folded, or an accident may occur because of inability to observe the rear of the vehicle.
- If the frame of the exterior rearview mirror is displaced due to external forces, do not manually adjust it, but electrically fold the exterior rearview mirrors. Otherwise it will affect the adjustment function of the exterior rearview mirrors.

## Electric heating of exterior rearview mirrors*



Electric heating of exterior rearview mirror lens can only work when the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode.

Press the rear windshield defogging/defrosting button on the A/C control interface of CSD to turn on the rear windshield heating and defogging/defrosting, and the exterior rearview mirrors are heated for defogging/defrosting at the same time.

**Notice**

Do not turn on the electric heating function of the exterior rearview mirrors when not necessary, so as to avoid overheating of the exterior rearview mirrors and the rear windshield and wasting the battery power.

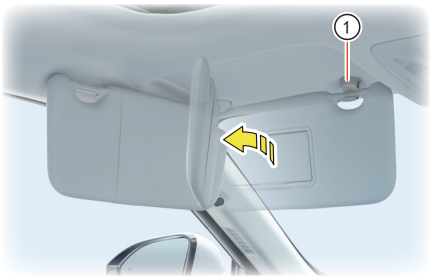
## Sun visor

### Blocking front sunlight



Pull down the sun visor to block the front dazzling light.

### Blocking side sunlight




Separate the sun visor from central bracket ① and turn it to the side to block the side dazzling light.

**Notice**

If you need to turn the sun visor to the side while driving, please observe the distance to the front and rear vehicles and slow down or stop the vehicle before any operation. Please be cautious when turning the sun visor, during which it may block the driver's sight.

## Vanity mirror




The make-up mirror is on the back of the sun visor. Pull down the sun visor and then open the make-up mirror cover to use the makeup mirror.

**Notice**

Do not use the make-up mirror while driving to avoid distraction which may cause an accident.

## Power windows

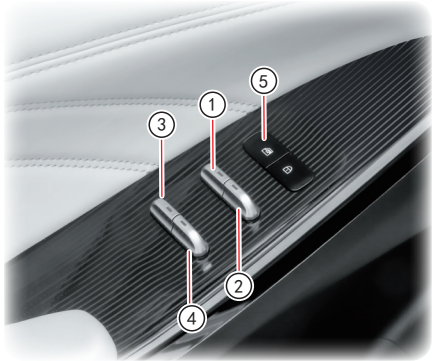
The 4 doors of this vehicle are all equipped with power windows that allow express-up & down* and anti-pinch function*.

The power window switch works only when the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode.

**Warning**

- Before closing the power window, check that all occupants do not extend any body part out of the window.
- Never leave children or adults to be attended alone in the vehicle. They may trigger the switch to close the window unintentionally, causing suffocation or even death.
- If an occupant stays in the vehicle, even in an open area, the window must be kept open after the engine is shut down.
- The automatic anti-pinch function does not work when the window is about to close fully, therefore check that all occupants do not extent any body part out of the window, so as to avoid pinch.

## Power window master switch




The power window master switch on the driver's door armrest can control all windows and deactivate the passenger window regulator switches.

① Front left

② Right front

③ Left rear

④ Right rear

⑤ Switch for deactivating front and rear passenger window regulator switches

- Automatic mode (express-up & down*): Push or pull the switches ① ~④ forward or backward to the limit with slight force. Then the windows will lower or lift to the limit position automatically even if the switches are released. During automatic lowering or lifting of the windows, pushing or pulling the switches forward or backward again can stop the windows.
- Manual mode: Keep pushing or pulling switches ①~④ forward or backward gently (not beyond the limit) to lower or lift the windows, and release the switches to stop the windows.
- Press the switch ⑤ to deactivate the window regulator switches on the passenger door armrests; press the switch again to activate the window regulator switches.

**⚠ Warning**

When a child is in the vehicle, it is suggested that the driver deactivate the passenger's window regulator switches to prevent the child from operating the switches.

## Passenger window regulator switch



The passenger window regulator switch is used to lift and lower the corresponding side window in the same way as the driver window regulator switch.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, other windows on some models also allow express-up & down and anti-pinch function.

When being deactivated by the driver's power window master switch, the passenger window regulator switches will not work.

## Automatic UP/DOWN*

After the vehicle power is switched off, convenient automatic lifting/lowering of windows can be realized by the smart key and the request switch. (Please refer to page 11)

## Window power delay*

Within 30 s after the vehicle power supply is switched from "ON" to "OFF", you can control the raising or lowering of the window using the window regulator switch. For vehicles without anti-pinch module, when the door is opened, the window power delay function is disabled.

## Anti-pinch function*

In case of any obstacle during window lifting, the window will lower to some extent and then stop.

## Initializing express-up and down and anti-pinch function

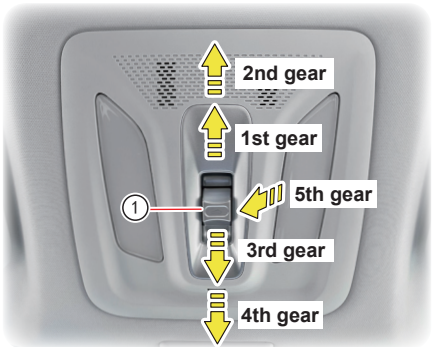
If the battery is disconnected and then reconnected or the window express-up and down and anti-pinch functions fail, the power window needs to be initialized:

1. Push the window lift switch forward to lower the glass to the limit and keep the state for 2 seconds;
2. Then pull the window regulator switch backward to lift the window to the limit for 2s until the initialization is completed;

## Panoramic sunroof*

### Notice

- Before closing the sunroof, check that no occupant is close to the sunroof, so as to avoid personal injury.
- Never leave children or adults to be attended alone in the vehicle. They may trigger the switch and control unintentionally, thus causing accidents.
- Open the power sunroof only when there is no ice or snow on the panoramic sliding sunroof. Otherwise, a fault may occur.
- Do not allow any objects to extend out of the sliding sunroof, lest the seal might be damaged.
- During driving, when the sliding sunroof is open, airflow noise and resonant noise may be emitted. This is a normal phenomenon, and changing the position of the sliding sunroof or opening either window can reduce such noise.
- Remove the water drops, snow, ice or sand on the sunroof before opening the sunroof.
- Do not place any objects on or around the sunroof.
- When the sunroof is open, do not activate the windshield washer. Otherwise, the washer fluid may be sprayed onto the windshield and then splashed into the vehicle.
- Check and clean the sunroof drain hole to prevent clogging.




The sunroof switch (1) is located in the center of the 2 interior front ceiling lights.

The switch operates properly when the vehicle power supply is in "ON" and the sunroof is closed.

### Caution

- When the sunshade is closed, you can also pull the sunroof switch backward. Then, the sunroof is opened when the sunshade opens fully.
- The sunroof sunshade can only be opened or closed when the panoramic sunroof is closed.

## Sunroof sunshade

### Opening sunroof sunshade

When you toggle the switch backward to position 1 and then release the switch, the sunroof sunshade slides back until it is fully open. If you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof sunshade stops moving.

### Closing sunroof sunshade

If the sunroof is in the closed state, when you toggle the switch forward to position 3 or 4 and then release the switch, the sunroof sunshade will automatically slide forward until it is fully closed. When you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof sunshade will stop moving.

If it is in the open state, when you toggle the switch forward to position 4 and then release the switch, the glass will slide forward to the fully closed state and then the sunshade will run forward to the fully closed state. When you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass/sunshade stops moving.

## Opening/closing panoramic sunroof

### Tilting and opening sunroof

If the sunroof glass is in the closed state and the sunshade is closed or opened by less than 100mm, when you press the sunroof switch upward (position 5) and then release the switch, the sunshade will open backward by 100mm and the glass will tilt and open to the maximum position. When you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass stops moving.

If the sunroof glass is in any opening position, when you press the sunroof switch upward and then release the switch, the sunroof glass will automatically tilt upward completely to the maximum tilting position. Then, when you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass stops moving.

### Tilting and closing of sunroof

If the sunroof glass is in any tilting position, when you toggle the switch forward to position 3 and then release the switch, the sunroof glass will run to the closed position. Then, when you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass stops moving.

### Sliding opening of sunroof

If the sunroof glass is in the closed state and the sunshade is in the closed or non-completely open state, when you toggle the switch backward to position 2 and then release the switch, the sunroof glass will automatically open after the sunshade is opened completely. When you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass/sunshade stops moving.

If the sunroof glass is in the closed state and the sunshade is in the fully open state, when you toggle the switch backward and then release the switch, the sunroof glass will automatically open to the limit position. Then, the sunroof glass stops moving when the switch is toggled at any time midway.

### Sliding closing of sunroof

If the sunroof glass is in any opening position, when you toggle the switch forward to position 3 and then release the switch, the sunroof glass runs to the closed position. Then, when you toggle the switch at any time midway, the sunroof glass stops moving.

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not close the sunroof shade with the sunroof open during driving. The wind blowing against the driving direction of the vehicle may cause the sunshade to flip over and cause damage to the parts.
- Do not allow anyone to stand or extend their body out of the sunroof while it is being closed to avoid injury.

## Convenient closing*

After the vehicle power is switched off, convenient automatic closing of the sunroof can be realized by the smart key and the request switch. (Please refer to page 11)

**Notice**

The sunroof rails and grooves may be cleaned regularly with a rag to prevent debris from blocking the sunroof drain holes so as to avoid water entering the vehicle. It is recommended that the sunroof slides and grooves are cleaned and the slides are lubricated at regular intervals by an authorized dealer.

## Anti-pinch function

In case of any obstacle during automatic closing of the sunroof or sunshade, the automatic anti-pinch function will allow the sunroof or sunshade to open to a certain extent.

In case of any obstacle during tilting closing of the sunroof, the automatic anti-pinch function will allow full tilting opening of the sunroof.

The automatic anti-pinch function also works in case of instantaneous load, which is opposite to the closing movement.

**⚠ Warning**

The automatic anti-pinch function might not work due to possible failure to detect obstacles when the sunroof is about to close fully. Before closing the sunroof, please check that all occupants do not extend any body part out of the vehicle.

## Initializing panoramic sunroof system

In the event that the battery cables are disconnected or some malfunction is detected and the sunroof and sunshade do not operate properly, follow the steps below to perform the sunroof initialization procedure. To complete one sunroof initialization cycle, you shall keep pressing the button for about 40 seconds:

1. When the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode, toggle the switch forward to 3rd or 4th position and hold it;
2. At this time, the sunroof glass moves forward and recognizes the front mechanical limit point;
3. After the sunshade moves forward and recognizes the front mechanical limit point, the sunshade opens backward automatically to 1/3 position and then stops moving;
4. The sunshade opens backward to the half-open position and then slides forward to the fully closed position;
5. The sunshade automatically closes completely;
6. Release the switch.

Ending of the above steps indicates completion of sunroof initialization, and the function can be verified by operating the sunroof switch. If the sunroof and sunshade still do not work properly, please contact an authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

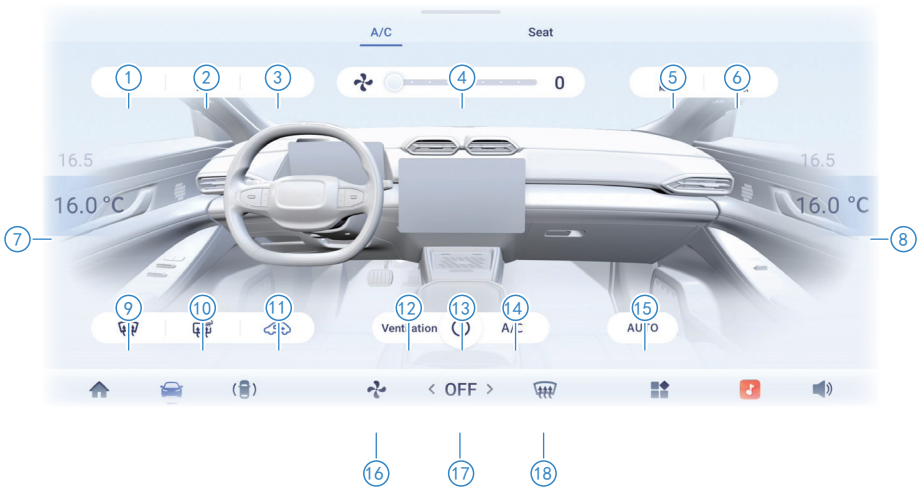
## HVAC (automatic A/C)

### A/C control type—*

- When the CSD is not in the A/C control interface, you can quickly adjust some of the A/C functions by pressing the air volume adjustment and front windshield defrosting/defogging buttons in the bottom navigation bar.




- On the CSD, you can turn on the A/C by taping the temperature control icon on the bottom status bar/swiping up the screen or through voice request to enter the vehicle A/C control and A/C status display interface:




① Front defogging/blowing mode button
② Foot blowing mode button
③ Face blowing mode button
④ Air volume control
⑤ Max cooling button
⑥ Maximum heating button
⑦ Temperature control
⑧ Temperature control
⑨ Front windshield defrosting/defogging button
⑩ Rear windshield defrosting/defogging button
⑪ Fresh air/recirculation button
⑫ Ventilation button
⑬ A/C ON/OFF button
⑭ A/C (cooling) button
⑮ AUTO mode button
⑯ Air volume control
⑰ Temperature control
⑱ Front windshield defrosting/defogging button

**Caution**

When a button is highlighted on the CSD or the button indicator is illuminated, it indicates that this button function is turned on.

- When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the air volume can be adjusted through the air volume button.
- To realize fast cooling inside the vehicle in hot summer, please open the windows for ventilation first, then turn on the A/C, set the temperature to the lowest and the air volume to the maximum, select the face blowing mode, and when the appropriate temperature is reached, adjust to the desired temperature and air volume.
- In rainy and cold weather, prolonged use of the recirculation mode may cause fogging on the windows.
- During cooling, water vapor in the air condenses and then the condensate water is discharged through the pipe. Therefore, there will be a puddle of water underneath the vehicle when the vehicle stops, which is a normal phenomenon.

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not leave children or adults that need to be taken care, and any pets alone in the vehicle. They may activate switches or controllers accidentally, resulting in a serious accident, even death.
- In hot and sunny weather, the temperature inside the vehicle will rise rapidly in a closed environment, which may cause serious or even fatal injury to people or animals.
- Do not adjust the HVAC during driving in order to be able to concentrate on driving.

**i Caution**

- The A/C may be prevented from working in the case of depleting fuel and low battery power. It is recommended that you charge/refuel as soon as possible in the case of depleting fuel and low battery power.
- If there is frost on the A/C circuit during charging or a battery temperature alarm in summer, please go to the store in time to check if the coolant level is too low.

## Adjustment of A/C system

### Turning on A/C system

When the A/C system is turned off, you can turn on the A/C by pressing the A/C on/off button , AUTO button AUTO, A/C button A/C , maximum cooling button , maximum heating button MAX, air volume adjustment button, front windshield defrosting/defogging button , or blowing mode button.
Press the front windshield defrosting/defogging button to enable the A/C to enter the front windshield defrosting/defogging mode directly, and press the button again to turn off the system.

### Turning off A/C system

When the A/C system is turned on, if you press the A/C ON/OFF button , the A/C system will shut down and memorize the operation status (temperature level, air volume level, air outlet mode, etc.) before shut-down. When the A/C system is turned on again, it will operate in the last memorized state.

**i Caution**

If the A/C is turned off by pressing the A/C OFF button before the vehicle is powered off, the last A/C operation status cannot be memorized.

### AUTO mode

Press the AUTO mode AUTO button, and then press the temperature up/down button to set the temperature. Then the system automatically senses the inside temperature, and controls the recirculation/fresh air mode, airflow distribution mode and fan speed to increase or reduce the inside temperature to the set value as soon as possible.

### Manual mode

When the A/C is in AUTO mode, the AUTO mode will be exited and the manual mode will be entered by pressing the recirculation/fresh air switching button, blowing mode button A/C, maximum cooling button, maximum heating button, front windshield defrosting/defogging button. Manually adjust the air outlet mode, air volume, temperature, recirculation/fresh air, front/rear windshield defogger/defroster, etc. to meet the comfort requirements.

### Temperature regulation




Slide the temperature adjustment slider in the A/C control interface downward, the temperature increases; When the temperature reaches 31°C, if you continue to slide the slider downward, it will enter the maximum heating mode and the temperature is displayed as 32°C. Thereafter, the A/C controller does not respond to the command to increase the temperature. Slide the temperature adjustment slider in the A/C control interface upward, the temperature decreases; When the temperature reaches 17°C, if you continue to slide the slider downward and the temperature is displayed as 16°C, and the A/C controller does not respond to the command to decrease the temperature.

In the case that the temperature inside the vehicle is high and cooling is required, the cooling equipment will work only when the A/C button A/C is pressed with the vehicle running.

### Air volume regulation




Slide the airflow control slider to start the A/C system. When the A/C is turned on, slide the airflow control slider to change the fan speed.

There are 8 fan speed positions. If you slide the airflow control slider upward, the airflow increases; if you slide it downward, the airflow decreases.

### Switching fresh air/recirculation mode

When you tap the recirculation/fresh air switching button on the CSD, the button lights up to indicate that the vehicle is in the recirculation mode; When you tap the recirculation/fresh air switching button on the CSD again, the button is dimmed to indicate that the vehicle is in the fresh air mode.

### Blowing mode switching



With the A/C turned on, the blowing mode can be selected by pressing the mode button on the CSD. The blowing mode is a combination button for window blowing, face blowing and foot blowing. Users can choose one or two or three of them as required form the blowing mode of face blowing, foot blowing, window blowing, face&foot blowing, face&window blowing, foot&window blowing, or face&foot&window blowing.

Natural ventilation mode: Turn on the A/C at the maximum cooling mode, then turn off the A/C, and turn on the fresh air mode to achieve the effect of natural air flow from the outside.

**Caution**

Using foot blowing or foot&window blowing in winter can effectively improve the heating experience and prevent fogging on the glass; Using the face blowing mode in summer can quickly cool down. Do not use the window blowing mode for a long time in summer, otherwise fogging may occur on the outer glass.

### Front windshield defogging

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, you can press the front windshield defrosting/defogging button to turn on the front windshield defrosting to reduce moisture, fog, and frost on the surface of the windshield, thereby improving the visibility of the front and side front.

After cleaning the front windshield, please press the AUTO button AUTO to activate the AUTO mode.

### Rear windshield defogging

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, if you press the rear windshield defrosting/defogging button, the rear windshield and exterior rearview mirror heating function will be turned on; If you press the button again, the rear windshield defrosting/defogging function is turned off. This function will be automatically deactivated after 15 minutes if there is no manual operation.

The rear windshield defrosting/defogging function is used to reduce moisture, fog and frost on the surface of the rear windshield to improve the visibility of the rear.

**Notice**

For a continuous use of the defogger, be sure to start the vehicle for fear that the battery may run out easily.

**Caution**

- After the fog or frost is cleared, please try to turn off the windshield defogging function to reduce power consumption.
- When the A/C is in use, use the recirculation mode as much as possible; otherwise, it is easy to cause high energy consumption or poor cooling effect.

## A/C cooling mode

The A/C works only when the vehicle is running.

1. Wen you press the A/C button (A/C), the button will be highlighted;
2. Adjust the set temperature of A/C to a lower temperature. Please set the desired temperature according to the temperature value shown on the A/C screen;
3. Adjust the air volume as appropriate. Please set the desired air volume according to the fan intensity on the A/C screen.

It is recommended not to use window blowing or foot blowing/window blowing mode for a long time when the A/C is in cooling mode; otherwise, it is easy to cause fogging on the outside of the glass, which affects driving safety.

**Notice**

- If the outside temperature is very high, the recirculation mode can be activated to improve the cooling efficiency.
- If you need to activate the Max cooling function, press the Max cooling button (MAX). Then the A/C system will automatically set the recirculation mode, and adjust the temperature to the lowest and the air volume to the maximum.
- If you feel hot air coming out of the air outlets in summer, please set the A/C to recirculation mode and set the temperature to the lowest value.

**Notice**

- Wen you press the A/C button (A/C), the button will be highlighted to indicate that the A/C compressor has started working.
- During cooling, the condensate water in the system is drained through the prearranged pipe. Therefore, there will be a puddle of water underneath the vehicle when the vehicle stops.
- To maintain a good sealing performance of the compressor, the A/C shall be operated at least once per month.
- The A/C will always be useful in any season because it can eliminate moisture and vapor.
- To achieve good cooling effect, the windows shall be closed when the A/C is turned on.
- However, the windows can be opened for temporary ventilation and then closed as the inside temperature rises when the vehicle is kept under the sun for a long time. The A/C operation will increase the power consumption.

## One-touch maximum cooling

Press the maximum cooling mode button (MAX), the button will be highlighted, and the A/C system will automatically adjust the temperature inside vehicle, blower speed, air outlet mode, and air circulation to specific settings to achieve maximum cooling effect.

When the Max cooling button (MAX) is pressed again, the A/C system will deactivate the Max cooling function and return to the previous state.

**Caution**

- After the temperature inside vehicle drops to a suitable value, please try to turn off the maximum cooling function so as to reduce energy consumption.
- In heavy rain, it is not recommended to use fresh air mode of the A/C, otherwise the filter element may become damp due to heavy rain, resulting in mold and odor.

## One-touch maximum heating

Press the maximum heating button , the button will be highlighted, and the A/C system will automatically adjust the temperature inside vehicle, blower speed, air outlet mode, and air circulation to specific settings to achieve maximum heating effect.

When the maximum heating button  is pressed again, the system will exit the maximum heating function and return to the previous A/C state.

**Caution**

After the temperature inside vehicle drops to a suitable value, please try to turn off the maximum heating function so as to reduce energy consumption.

**Notice**

- If the outside temperature is very low, the recirculation mode can be activated to improve the heating efficiency.
- In case of fogging on the windshield, please press the front windshield defogger button, instead of turning on the heater for defogging when the A/C is off.

## A/C refrigerant

The environmental impact of refrigerant added to the A/C system has been considered thoroughly. In case of the A/C repair, be sure to use special refrigerant charger and lubricant. Because the incompetent refrigerant or lubricant will cause serious damage to the A/C system. (Refer to page 250 for details of recommended refrigerants)

**Notice**

Please go to an authorized dealer for maintenance of the A/C system.

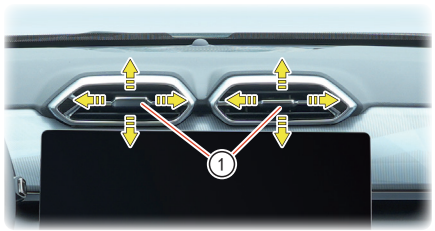
## A/C filter

The air filter equipped on the A/C system is used to remove the dirt, pollen, dust and others.

In order to maintain efficient heating, defogging and ventilation of the A/C system, please clean and replace the air filter at the maintenance interval prescribed in this manual. For replacement of the A/C filter, please contact an authorized dealer.

The air filter shall be replaced when airflow declines apparently or windows are prone to fogging up if heater or A/C is applied.

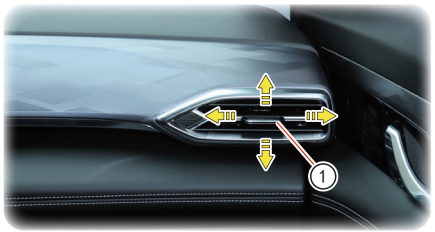
## Center air outlet




Turn the control knob ① to adjust the direction of airflow (up/down, left/right) at air outlet so as to guide air to the required position.

Move the control knob ① to the outside to increase the air volume of the air outlet; move the control knob ① to the inside to decrease the air volume of the air outlet until it is closed.

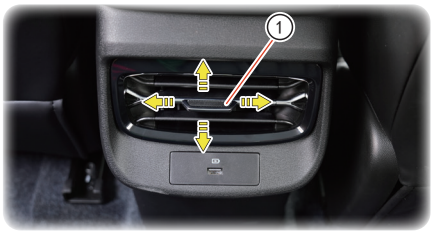
## Front side air outlet




Turn the control knob ① to adjust the direction of airflow (up/down, left/right) at air outlet so as to guide air to the required position.

Move the control knob ① to the outside to increase the air volume of the air outlet; move the control knob ① to the inside to decrease the air volume of the air outlet until it is closed.

## Rear center air outlet




Turn the control knob ① to adjust the direction of airflow (up/down, left/right) at air outlet so as to guide air to the required position.

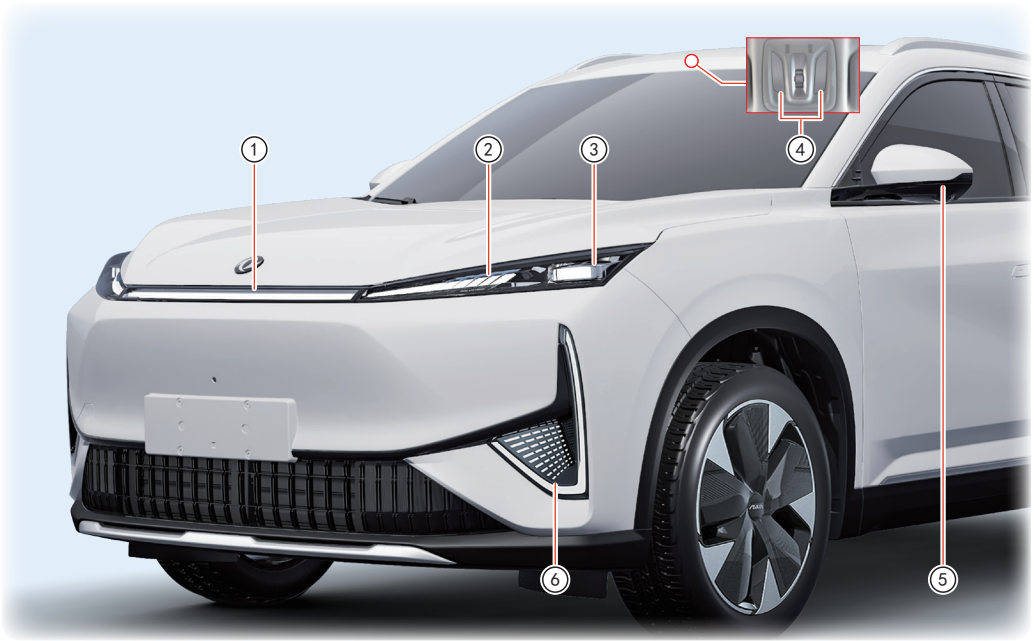
Move the control knob ① to the left to increase the airflow at the air outlet; move the control knob ① to the right to decrease the airflow at the air outlet until it is closed.

**i Caution**

After the air outlet is closed, there may still be a certain amount of air flow and the air may come out of the air outlet, which is a normal phenomenon.

## Lighting

### Light position (front)




① Front through-type light (decorative light)*

② Daytime running light/position light/turn signal light

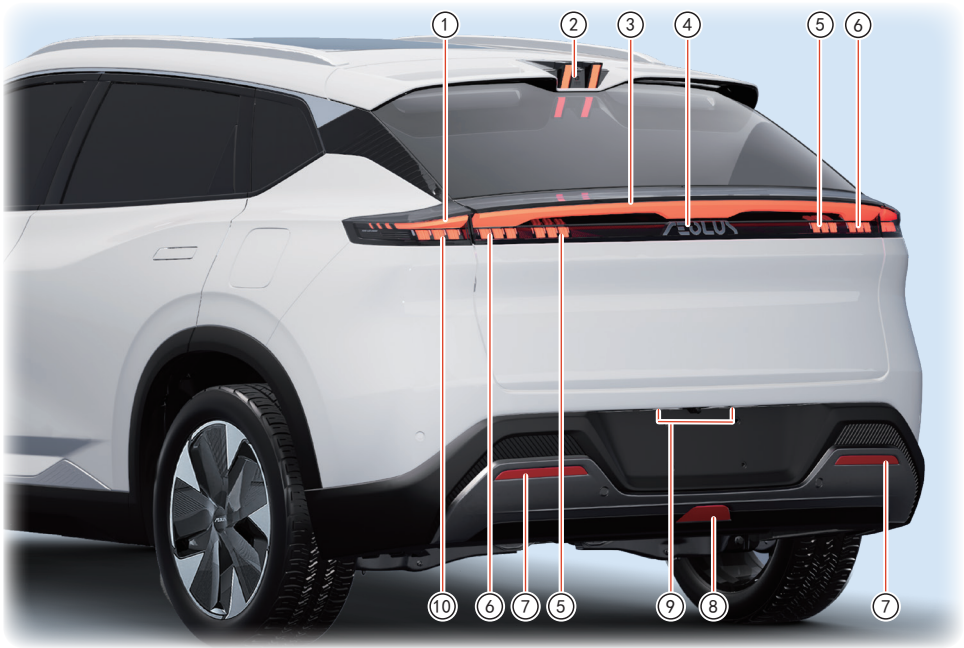
③High beam and low beam

④ Front ceiling light*

⑤ Rearview mirror side turn signal light

⑥ Front bumper trim light*

## Light position (rear)




① Position light/brake light*
② High-mounted brake light
③ Position light/brake light*
④ Rear through-type light (decorative light)*
⑤ Reversing light/turn signal light*
⑥ Turn signal light*/brake light*
⑦ Rear retro reflector
⑧ Rear fog light
⑨ License plate light
⑩ Turn signal light

Note: Retro-reflector is used to reflect the light from any vehicle behind to remind the driver of the vehicle behind to keep a safety distance. If the retro-reflector is damaged, it shall be replaced by an authorized dealer in time to ensure driving safety.

## Lighting function

### Main lighting function

The use of vehicle light shall comply with the local road traffic regulations.

The front and rear lights of the vehicle are used to guarantee good field of view for the driver, and provide signals for other road users:

- Position light - When the vehicle is traveling or temporarily parked, it indicates the presence and width of the vehicle, so that the vehicle can be easily identified by other road users.
- Low beam: Lighting up the road ahead. In case of meeting, use low beam rather than high beam to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic.
- High beam: Lighting up the road further ahead. Always switch to low beam in case of meeting.

**Notice**

Since a lot of heat produced when the headlight is on shall dissipate through the air vent on the headlight, the light is not fully sealed. Wet air can also flow into the headlight through this vent, and water vapor condenses or icing occurs on the cool light housing, which is a normal natural phenomenon, and has no impact on lighting function and service life of the headlight. When there is water vapor condensation in the headlights, park the vehicle in a dry, ventilated place where the water vapor will gradually dissipate. If there is water accumulated in the lampshade, please contact an authorized dealer.

### Auxiliary lighting and signaling function

The auxiliary lights are provided for use under special driving conditions:

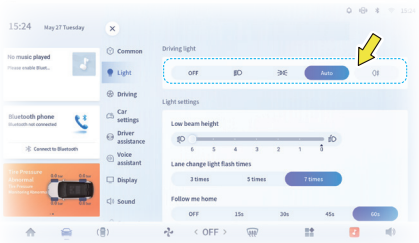
- Rear fog light: For battery identification of the vehicle from a distance when it is foggy.
- Daytime running light: For battery identification of the vehicle during daytime driving.
- Turn signal light: When the vehicle turns, this light signals to warn other vehicles.

**Notice**

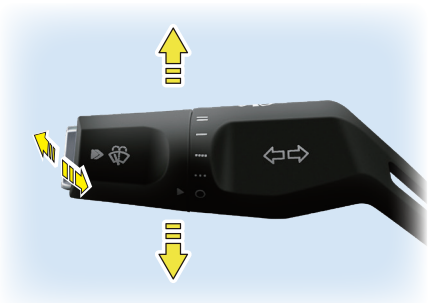
When the vehicle power supply is in "OFF" mode, the lights (except the position lights) can stay on for up to 5 min, and then automatically go out. Be sure to turn off all lights when parking and leaving the vehicle, so as to avoid battery undervoltage.

## Lighting control

### CSD soft switch control interface:




### Light and wiper stalk:



### Lighting OFF

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, tap the OFF icon, the icon will be highlighted, and all lights will go out.

### Automatic headlight ON*

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, if you tap the Auto icon, the automatic headlight ON indicator AUTO on the instrument cluster lights up, and then the headlight will light up automatically in the dark environment outside the vehicle (e.g. at night or when driving through a tunnel, etc.). At this point, tap OFF on the interface to turn off the headlight auto-lighting function.

When the automatic headlight function is malfunctioning, the low beam and position lights will be illuminated. Please contact a franchise store for inspection.

### Position light

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, if you tap the icon, the position light ON indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and then the front and rear position lights and the backlight of the instrument cluster will light up.

### Low/high beam ON

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, if you tap the icon below the running light control bar, the low beam ON indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, and then the low beam lights up.

When the low beam goes on, push the light/wiper stalk forward along a direction perpendicular to the steering wheel plane, so that both the high beam and the low beam go on, and the high beam ON indicator on the instrument cluster also goes on. To turn off the high beam, push the light/wiper stalk forward again.

### High beam warning

Even if no light is turned on, you can turn on the high beam by pulling the light/wiper stalk along a direction perpendicular to the steering wheel plane, or turn it off by releasing the stalk which will return to the original position. Repeated operation can make the high beam flash for warning.

**Notice**

Turning on the high beam under good lighting conditions can dazzle and cause visual illusion to the driver of the oncoming vehicle, thus easily leading to accidents. The high beam shall be used as follows:

- Never use the high beam when driving on the urban roads.
- The high beam and low beam shall be turned on alternately in the case of meeting in the night. In the case of meeting in the night on a road without central isolation facilities or centerlines, be sure to switch to the low beam 150m from the oncoming traffic.
- When the motor vehicle is passing through a sharp curve, hill, arch bridge, crosswalk or intersection without traffic lights in the night, the high beam and low beam shall be turned on alternately for warning.
- When the vehicle is overtaking in the night, the high beam and low beam shall be turned on alternately for warning; please give way safely when the rear vehicle is using the high beam and low beam alternately.
- If the high beam from the oncoming vehicle dazzles you, turn on the high beam and low beam alternately to remind the driver to turn off the high beam.
- When the driver of the oncoming vehicle frequently switching the high/low beam to warn your, switch to low beam.
- If the high beam from the vehicle behind dazzles you, lightly depress the brake pedal several times to remind the driver to keep a safe distance.
- When driving on the expressway, please turn on the high beam.

### Intelligent high beam control (IHBC)*

The intelligent high beam control (IHBC) function can be used for automatic switch between high and low beams according to the driving environment, to avoid drivers being distracted by controlling the high and low beams, and at the same time avoid dazzling the driver in front of the vehicle or of the oncoming vehicle, thus enhancing driving safety.

The IHBC senses the ambient light level and the vehicle in front of you through the environment sensing sensor. When the ambient light is dark, there is no vehicle in front of you, and the speed of your car is higher than 40km/h, the high beam will be turned on automatically; when the speed of your car is lower than 30km/h, or there is a vehicle in front of you, or the ambient light is bright, the high beam will be turned off automatically.

### Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) ON

Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) ON: Slide the slider of "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Vehicle Lights" - "IHBC" bar in the CSD to turn on the IHBC function.

When the IHBC function is turned on, the automatic IHBC indicator up in gray on the instrument cluster, and the indicator turns blue when the high beams are turned on with IHBC enabled.

### Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) fault

If there is a malfunction in the IHBC function, the automatic IHBC yellow indicator on the instrument cluster goes on.

### Factors affecting the IHBC function

Due to unavoidable environmental factors and conditions, it may be necessary to manually switch between high beam and low beam in the following situations:

- Driving in foggy or rainy weather;
- Driving in windy or snowy conditions or on slushy roads;
- Driving in bright moonlight;
- Driving in freezing rain;
- Driving on dimly lit streets;
- When the front fog lights of oncoming vehicles are on;
- The presence of sign light reflectors near the roadway;
- Lights of oncoming vehicles are obscured by hedges, shrubs, etc;
- Vehicles traveling on other roads;
- Driving on top of hills or road potholes;
- The vehicle is traveling in a sharp turn.

### Turn signal light

Turn the light/wiper stalk upward to the bottom along a direction parallel to the steering wheel plane, so that the right turn signal light goes on. At this time, the right turn indicator on the instrument cluster will flash.

Turn the light/wiper stalk downward to the bottom along a direction parallel to the steering wheel plane, so that the left turn signal light goes on. At this time, the left turn indicator on the instrument cluster will flash.

When the steering is completed, toggle the GTW up or down to turn off the turn signal light.

### Turn signal light fault

With the turn signal light on, if the front and rear turn signal lights as well as the turn indicator light of the corresponding side on the instrument cluster flash at a high frequency, it indicates that the turn signal light is faulty and needs repair. Please go to a franchise store for inspection.

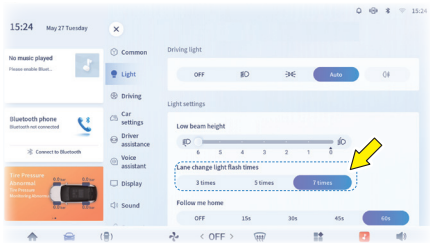
### Lane change function of turn signal light

When lane change is required, pull the light/wiper stalk gently.

To change to the right lane, turn the light/wiper stalk upward along a direction parallel to the steering wheel plane (up to the limit point). The right turn signal light will flash 3/5/7 times, and the right turn indicator on the instrument cluster will flash at the same time.

To change to the left lane, turn the light/wiper stalk downward along a direction parallel to the steering wheel plane (up to the limit point). The left turn signal light will flash 3/5/7 times, and the left turn indicator on the instrument cluster will flash at the same time.

### Settings of number of lane change warning light flashing




In the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Vehicle Lights" - "Number of Lane Changing Light Flashing" of the CSD, the number of lane changing light flashing can be set (3/5/7 times).

### Fog light

The fog light can only be turned on when the low beam or the high beam is turned on.

### Rear fog light ON

When the rear fog lights are off, in the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, if you tap the icon below the running light control bar, the rear fog lights will be illuminated, and the rear fog light ON indicator on the instrument cluster lights up at the same time.

**Notice**

The use of fog lights is required only in rainy, foggy, icy or snowy weather or in case of poor visibility.

### Rear fog light OFF

When the rear fog lights are on, if you tap the icon in the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" menu interface of the CSD, the rear fog lights will go out.

## Adjustment of headlight illumination height

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the front headlight illumination height can be adjusted in the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" - "Headlight Height" bar on the CSD.

**Up:** toggle the slider to the right;

**Down:** toggle the slider to the left.

**Caution**

The headlight illumination height adjustment only applies to the low beam instead of the high beam.

## Lighting delay (follow-me-home function)

The delayed illumination function can be realized by the following operations:

1. Switch the vehicle power supply from "ON" to "OFF" mode;
2. Pull the light/wiper stalk along a direction perpendicular to the steering wheel plane within 60s. At this moment, the low beam will stay on for a period of time to facilitate you to leave the parking space. After this delay ends, the low beam will go out automatically.

### Setting of Follow-me-home lights

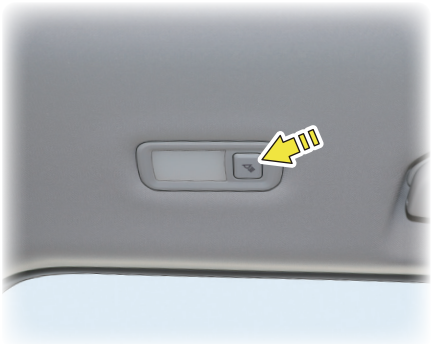
You can set the delayed lighting time ("OFF", "15s", "30s", "45s" or "60s") in the "Vehicle Center" - "Lighting" - "Lights" - "Follow Me Home" bar on the CSD.

## Front ceiling light



When you open the door, the front dome light will light up automatically; after you close the door or start the vehicle, the front dome light will turn off automatically; if the dome light is lit by pressing the front dome light cover during the automatic lighting period, you need to press the cover again to turn off the front dome light.

## Rear ceiling light



When you open the door, the rear dome light is lit automatically; after you close the door or start the vehicle, the rear dome light goes out automatically; if the dome light is lit by pressing the rear dome light switch during the automatic lighting period, you need to press the switch again to turn off the rear dome light.

## Lighting power delay function

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode and the low beam, high beam, rear fog light are on, switch the vehicle power supply to "OFF" mode, and the low beam, high beam, rear fog light will stay on for 5min and then go out automatically.

If the lights are not turned off when you get out of the vehicle, press the lock button on the remote control on the premise that all the doors are closed. The headlights will go out automatically.

## Energy-saving function of interior lights

The interior lights turned on will automatically go out within 5min after the vehicle power supply is switched to "OFF" mode. To turn the interior lights on again, switch the vehicle power supply to "ON" mode.

## Trunk light

The trunk light located on the trunk goes on when the tailgate is opened. This light goes out when the tailgate is closed.

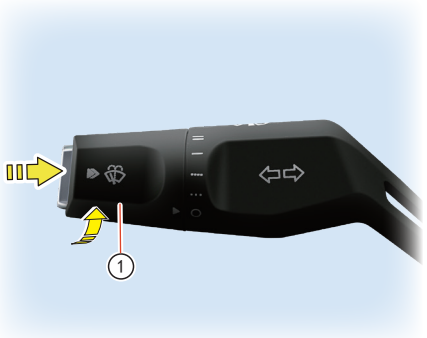
## Windshield wiper & washer

The windshield wiper and washer can operate only when the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode.

**Notice**

- If the windshield wiper cannot operate due to snow or ice, do not turn on the wiper at this time. Turn on the windshield defogger to heat the windshield and remove the snow or ice on and around the wiper arm before turning on the wiper.
- After cleaning the vehicle in the automatic vehicle washer, if there are stains on the windshield wiped by the windshield wiper, it may be wax or other residue. After cleaning the vehicle in the automatic vehicle washer, clean the windshield with windshield washer fluid.
- Do not operate the windshield wiper when the windshield is dry, as wiping without water will damage the wiper blade. In addition, dirt on the windshield may scratch the windshield which shall be sprayed with water before wiping.

## Windshield wiper & washer combination switch




**Front windshield wiper**

O - Stop.

- Single wiping.

- Intermittent wiping.

- Low-speed wiping.

- High-speed wiping.

When the combination switch is in the O position, the windshield wiper and washer will not operate.

If you turn the knob ① to the ▪▪▪ position, the front windshield wiper wipes the glass once, and then automatically returns to the initial position.

When the knob ① is turned to ▪▪▪▪, the front windshield wipers will work intermittently.

When the knob ① is turned to —, the front windshield wipers will wipe at low speed.

### Front windshield washer

If you press the button at the combination switch end, the front nozzle starts spraying washer fluid while the front wiper is operating.

Release the end button of the combination switch to make the front windshield washer system off, and the front wipers will wipe continuously for 3 times to clean the front windshield.

If the end button of the combination switch is pressed briefly, the wipers will only wipe once.

**⚠ Warning**

When the ambient temperature is below 0°C, if the washer fluid is sprayed on the windshield, the washer fluid may freeze on the windshield, resulting in blurred vision and affecting driving safety; if it is necessary to clean the windshield, please do it at a low speed or at a stop.

**Notice**

- When the sunroof is open, do not activate the windshield washer. Otherwise, the washer fluid may be sprayed onto the windshield and then splashed into the vehicle.
- Do not keep the washer operating continuously for more than 30 s.
- If there is no washer fluid in the reservoir, do not operate the washer.
- Always use de-icer windshield washer fluid in winter. Adding tap water is not allowed as it will freeze and cause damage to the washer mechanism.

# 2 Safe Driving


**Driving instructions.....88**
Keeping the vehicle in normal conditions88
Maintaining the correct sitting posture....88
Driving with care.....89
Common sense and skills of driving.....90
Safe parking.....96
**Overview of driver's console functions 98**
**Steering wheel control.....100**
Horn switch.....100
Steering wheel buttons* .....100
**Instrument cluster .....103**
Type of instrument cluster .....103
indicators and warning lights*.....107
Buzzer and text reminder*.....116
**Starting, shifting gears .....118**
Pedal area.....118
Vehicle start and power off.....119
Gearshift control.....121
Driving mode*.....123
Energy mode*.....124
**Braking and brake assistance.....125**
Electric park brake (EPB).....127
Automatic holding(AUTO HOLD) .....128
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....129
Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) ... 130
Brake assist (BA) system .....130
Brake override system (BOS).....130
Electronic stability control (ESC) system* .. 131
Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)*.....132
Hydraulic brake boost (HBB)* .....132
Hill hold control (HHC)* .....132
Traction control system (TCS)* .....132
Hill descent control (HDC)* .....133
Active rollover protection (ARP)*.....133
**Electric power steering system.....134**
**Dual-mode drive and energy feedback* 135**
**AVAS*.....136**
**Cruise control*.....137**
Cruise control*.....137
ACC* .....139
**Intelligent driving assist*.....144**
Forward collision warning (FCW)*.....144
Automatic emergency braking (AEB)*..145
Lane keeping assist (LKA)*.....147
Indirect tire pressure monitoring system .... 152
**Parking assist .....153**
PDC.....153
Reverse camera *.....155
360° AVM * .....156
**Anti-theft system .....160**
General description .....160
Body anti-theft function.....160
**Refueling .....161**
Refueling .....161

This section mainly introduces important information, operating essentials, recommendations and safety precautions for safe driving. For the safety of you and passengers, please read carefully and follow relevant regulations.

## Keeping the vehicle in normal conditions

Vehicle faults will severely impair safe driving. In order to keep safe during driving, drivers shall go to an authorized dealer for scheduled maintenance according to provisions of this manual, and always carry out routine maintenance before driving.

## Maintaining the correct sitting posture

### Correct sitting posture of driver

Ridding with a correct posture can reduce driving fatigue and ensure safe driving.

For the safety of drivers and passengers, drivers shall carry out the following operations before driving:

1. Move the seat back and forth to a suitable position so that the accelerator pedal and brake pedal can be completely depressed when the knee joint is slightly bent;
2. Adjust the seat backrest to a suitable angle so that the driver's back can completely fit the seat backrest;
3. Adjust the steering wheel to make the driver's chest as distanced from the steering wheel as possible. Ensure that the highest point of the steering wheel can be held even when the elbow joint is slightly bent;
4. Adjust rearview mirrors to appropriate positions;
5. Fasten seat belts correctly.

### Correct sitting posture of front passenger

For safe riding, the front passenger shall observe the following:

1. Adjust the seat to keep an enough distance between the front passenger and the instrument panel, so the airbag can provide most effective protection when triggered.
2. Adjust the seat backrest to be nearly vertical so that the front passenger's back fits the seat backrest;
3. Fasten seat belts correctly;
4. Place feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

### Correct sitting posture of rear passengers

For safe riding, rear passengers shall observe the following:

1. Keep correct sitting postures and lean backs against seat backrests;
2. Place feet in the footwell in front of rear seats;
3. Fasten seat belts correctly;
4. For safe riding of kids, correct protective measures must be taken in accordance with relevant regulations.

### Safe riding of pets

If there are pets in the vehicle, please pay attention to the following:

1. During driving, do not play with pets. Otherwise, serious accidents may occur;
2. Be sure that pets are properly secured at all times during driving, for example, using an animal transport box; Otherwise, they may interfere with the driver's control on the vehicle, causing serious accidents;
3. In case of accidents, sudden turns or emergency braking, unsecured pets are likely to be thrown up in the vehicle, causing personal injuries;
4. Do not leave pets unattended in the vehicle, as they may accidentally press switches to activate in-vehicle devices, causing serious accidents. Pets may also die of suffocation in an airtight vehicle.

### Loads

**Notice**

As loads on the vehicle and their distribution will obviously change driving characteristics of the vehicle, the driving mode must be adjusted accordingly for steady driving. Especially in the case of heavy loads, be sure to reduce vehicle speed appropriately.

## Driving with care

- Avoid sudden acceleration or sudden braking.
- Avoid sharp turns.
- Avoid sudden turns or sudden lane changes.
- Avoid being too close to the vehicle in front.
- Avoid driver fatigue: avoid driving when the reaction ability decreases. For example, taking medicines that make people lethargic, alcoholic drinks and drugs will weaken people's reaction abilities, causing serious accidents.

Drive the vehicle depending on specific conditions of roads and weather (e.g., strong winds, dust, rainstorm, blizzard, wading, mountainous areas, etc.) to ensure safe and comfortable driving. The driver must master how to drive the vehicle in specific environments.

**Warning**

- Do not be distracted from external factors during driving, for example, smoking, eating, talking with passengers or answering phone calls.
- Do not drive the vehicle when reaction abilities decrease. For example, taking medicines that make people lethargic, alcoholic drinks and drugs will weaken people's reaction abilities, causing serious accidents. (The World Health Organization has listed seven major categories of medicines that may affect safe driving, and proposed that driving shall be prohibited after drivers take any of these medicines, including hypnotic drugs that have an impact on the nervous system, drugs that cause nausea and vomiting reactions or allergies, analgesic drugs, stimulants, drugs for treating epilepsy, antihypertensive drugs and hypoglycemic drugs.)
- Strictly abide by traffic regulations and vehicle speed limits.
- Pay attention to the speed at any time, and always adapt the speed to present road conditions, traffic flow and weather conditions.
- When the vehicle is running, avoid rolling crop straws, weeds, etc. to prevent them hanging near the exhaust pipe of the vehicle, for fear of fires.

## Common sense and skills of driving

### Efficient use of the vehicle

1. Perform maintenance on the vehicle in time to keep the vehicle in good operating conditions. Dirty air cleaners, oil, oil filters, spark plugs, etc. will reduce engine performance and waste fuel. To extend service lives of all parts and reduce operating costs, regular maintenance is required. If the vehicle often runs under harsh conditions, be sure to shorten the mileage and cycle of maintenance interval;
2. Maintain correct tire pressure. Insufficient tire pressure will lead to abnormal tire wear and increased fuel consumption;
3. Ensure correct wheel alignment. Otherwise, tires will wear out quickly, and engine load will increase, causing fuel to be wasted;
4. Do not place unnecessary items in the vehicle. Excessive loads will increase the engine load, resulting in increased fuel consumption;
5. Accelerate the vehicle slowly and steadily, and avoid rapid starting;
6. Avoid driving in areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams to prevent the vehicle from continuous acceleration and braking, which may cause fuel to be wasted;
7. Avoid unnecessary parking and braking, and keep driving at a stable speed. Observing traffic lights during driving can minimize stops. Or, try to drive on roads without traffic lights. Keep a safe distance from other vehicles during driving to avoid emergency braking, which will also reduce brake wear;
8. Do not place a foot on the brake pedal all the time. for fear of premature wear and overheating of brake pads and fuel waste;
9. Be sure to drive at a low speed in lateral gusts for easy control of the vehicle;
10. During driving, ensure correct driving tracks and prevent sharp objects or curbs from scraping sides of tires. Otherwise, accidents such as tire burst may occur;
11. Avoid collision with curbs during driving. Reduce the vehicle speed when driving on uneven roads;
12. Avoid the chassis being stained with dirt to prevent increase in the vehicle's weight and prevent corrosion;
13. Brakes may be wetted during vehicle washing or wading through deep water. Please drive at a low speed after startup. With driving safety ensured, lightly step on the brake pedal several times to dry brakes quickly. Drive the vehicle carefully. If the brakes still do not work, stop the vehicle safely and contact an authorized dealer.

**Notice**

- Before driving, make sure that the parking brake has been released.
- Do not place a foot on the brake pedal during driving. Otherwise, the brake pedal may be unconsciously depressed, causing overheating of brake pads, unnecessary wear and fuel waste.
- Slow down when driving down a long and steep slope. If brakes are applied excessively, they will overheat and fail to work properly.
- During driving on a slippery road, be careful about acceleration, upshifting/downshifting or braking. Sudden acceleration or engine braking may cause the vehicle to slip.
- Avoid waterlogged roads during driving, for fear of wetting brakes.

### Three-way catalytic converter

The three-way catalytic converter is an emission control device of the exhaust system. Discharged gas burns at a high temperature in the three-way catalytic converter, which helps reduce exhaust missions.

**⚠ Warning**

- As components and exhaust of the exhaust system are very hot, people, animals and flammable materials shall be kept away from them.
- Do not park the vehicle on the ground with flammable materials, such as hay, waste paper or dead leaves. Otherwise, they may be ignited, causing a fire.
- Avoid driving frequently with very little fuel. If the vehicle keeps running when fuel is insufficient, it is easy to cause intermittent and irregular fuel supply to the engine, thus damaging the three-way catalytic converter.
- When the engine is warming up, do not let it idle at a high speed.
- Do not start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

### Exhaust

Do not run the engine for a long time in a closed place, for example, a garage.

When the vehicle is stopped, nobody shall stay therein with the engine keeping running for a long time nor the heater or AC kept on.

During driving, close the tailgate tightly. Otherwise, exhaust will enter the passenger compartment.

In the following cases, please go to an authorized dealer for overhaul:

1. It is suspected that exhaust has entered the cabin;
2. It is found that there are abnormal sounds from the exhaust system;
3. The exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged in an accident.

**⚠ Warning**

Exhaust contains colorless and tasteless carbon monoxide, which will lead to loss of consciousness and even death if inhaled in large quantities.

### Driving in the rain

When it rains, as the visibility decreases, windows get foggy and roads become slippery, please drive carefully.

A downpour will worsen the line of sight. Turn on the headlights, fog lights and hazard warning lights during driving.

Braking efficiency will be degraded if brakes are wetted. It is necessary to increase distances from other vehicles and reduce the vehicle speed during driving in rainy days.

Don't drive at a high speed in rainy days, as the higher the vehicle speed, the more likely the vehicle hydroplanes.

**Notice**

If there are waterlogged areas on roads, there is a danger of hydroplaning. Emergency braking, rapid acceleration and rapid turns may cause tire slippage and reduce the maneuverability of the vehicle, causing accidents.

## Wading

If it is required to wade through a waterlogged road section, please pay attention to the following:

1. Before wading, correctly estimate or probe the water depth and hidden dangers of waterlogged areas. Do not wade through waterlogged areas with unknown conditions;
2. Choose a flat place and drive steadily and slowly through waterlogged roads at the speed of walking;
3. During wading, do not stop halfway, nor let the engine stall;
4. After wading, gently depress the brake pedal a few times to dry brakes so as to restore braking force;
5. After wading, remove mud from treads in time.
6. Do not rush through waterlogged areas at high speed. Otherwise, water waves will form in front of the vehicle, which may cause water to enter the air intake of the engine and lead to serious damage to the engine.
7. Do not open any doors during wading. Avoid water entering the vehicle.
8. During wading, do not forcibly restart the engine after it stalls, for fear of irreversible damage to the engine.

## Driving skills in winter

1. When winter comes, please go to an authorized dealer for vehicle protection and maintenance.
2. Use engine oil, coolant and windshield washer fluid suitable in low temperature environments;
3. Use snow tires when necessary;
4. It is recommended to carry some necessary emergency tools such as snow brush and ice scraper;
5. Do not forcibly open frozen doors, windows or sunroof nor move frozen windshield wipers; melt frozen parts with warm water and wipe the water immediately to prevent freezing again;
6. Remove snow from the air intake under the windshield if necessary;
7. Check and remove ice and snow that may accumulate on front and rear windshields, exterior lights, roof, chassis, tires or brakes;
8. Remove snow or mud from soles of shoes before entering the vehicle;
9. Start the engine steadily, accelerate the vehicle slowly, and keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. Avoid rapid acceleration, emergency braking and sudden turns, and do not activate the cruise control function.

## Driving through tunnels

Human eyes need a period of time to adapt when the ambient light suddenly darkens or suddenly brightens. Pay attention to the following when driving through tunnels:

1. Slow down and keep a safe distance from the vehicles in front;
2. Carefully observe traffic signs or traffic information boards;
3. Turn on the headlights in advance, and do not use the horn.

## Braking skills

- Precautions for braking

After braking, move the foot from the brake pedal.

Do not depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time during driving.

When the braking system has applied strong braking force, continue to drive for a short distance to cool down brakes faster in airflow, rather than park immediately.

During driving, it is strictly prohibited to shut down the engine. Otherwise, the brake booster will not work, and great force is required to depress the brake pedal to make brakes work, which is very dangerous.

When the ABS is working normally, slight vibration of the brake pedal can be felt. At this time, continue to depress the brake pedal to the end rather than release it.

During emergency braking, depress the brake pedal to the end with fastest speed and largest force.

- Braking during downhill driving

During downhill driving, do not depress the brake pedal continuously. Otherwise, brakes will overheat and braking efficiency will reduce. When going down a long slope, do not gently depress the brake pedal continuously (cadence braking). Otherwise, it may cause the vacuum brake booster to degrade, impairing the braking efficiency.

- Braking on wet and slippery roads

During driving in heavy rain for a long time without applying brakes, the braking response may delay for the first application of brakes because they are wetted.

The braking response may also delay after the vehicle is washed or wades through deep water.

As braking distances are long on slippery roads, pay attention to keeping a larger distance from the vehicle in front.

After washing the vehicle or driving on slippery roads, lightly depress the brake pedal a few times when traffic conditions permit, in order to raise temperatures of brake discs and dry brakes, thus restoring the braking force.

- Braking on roads with road salt

During driving on roads with road salt, a salt layer may form on brake discs and pads, which may lead to a significant increase in braking distances. Follow the instructions below in order:

1. Provided that other road users are not endangered, apply brakes intermittently to prevent salt accumulation;
2. At the end of a stroke or before starting the next stroke, carefully depress the brake pedal;
3. Keep a greater distance from the vehicle ahead.

- Braking with new brake pads

The best braking effect can only be achieved through running-in after replacement with new brake pads and discs. Therefore, during initial driving, greater force must be applied to the brake pedal to achieve good braking effects.

## Running-in

### Precautions for running-in

In order to prolong the service life of the vehicle, a new vehicle shall be run-in at the initial stage of use.

1. The running-in mileage shall be 1500km;
2. Select a good road and drive with light loads;
3. Start the engine and perform operation gently, and keep a moderate vehicle speed not more than 80% of the maximum speed and a moderate engine speed. Do not drive at a constant speed for too long;
4. Do not depress the accelerator pedal to the end for sudden acceleration;
5. Avoid emergency braking in the first 300km;
6. Strictly follow operating procedures, be careful during the routine maintenance of the vehicle, and pay attention to sound and temperature changes of each assembly during operation.

When the vehicle has traveled for 3 months or 5000km (whichever comes first), the first maintenance must be carried out by an authorized dealer to qualify for the warranty.

### Engine running-in

Once the engine is run-in according to specifications, its service life can be prolonged and the fuel consumption reduced. A new engine must be run-in for 1500km. The following must be observed during running-in period:

1. Avoid making the engine run at a speed more than 4000r/min;
2. Do not tow other vehicles.

After 1500km, the engine speed and vehicle speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable range.

At the initial stage of running-in, the internal friction resistance of the engine is much larger than that after running-in, and oil consumption may be higher than that under normal conditions. Engine oil shall be checked regularly.

All moving parts of the engine can reach the best matching state only after running-in.

**Notice**

If the engine or any components of the transmission system are replaced, precautions for running-in shall be observed.

### Running-in of tires and brake pads

Drive at a moderate speed in the first 500km for the running-in of new tires.

In the first 300km, new brake pads and brake discs cannot get the best friction state. Avoid emergency braking, keep a safe braking distance, and slowly depress the brake pedal to achieve the best running-in state.

**Notice**

- As new tires and brake pads that have not been run-in do not achieve the best adhesion and friction, drive carefully in the first 500km to prevent accidents.
- Running-in is also required after replacement with new tires and brake pads.
- During driving, keep a safe distance from other vehicles to prevent emergency braking. At this time, as new tires and brake pads have not been run-in, their adhesion and friction are insufficient, which is easy to cause traffic accidents.

## Driving in severe cold weather

In severe cold weather, in addition to requirements for driving in winter, pay attention to the following:

- Ensure good battery performance.
- As the starting power provided by the battery at low temperatures is lower than that at normal temperatures, Therefore, before the winter comes, it is better to inspect the battery at an authorized dealer and charge or replace it if necessary.
- If the vehicle needs to be parked in an extremely cold environment for several days or longer, remove the battery and store it in a room with normal temperatures to protect it from freezing.
- In severe cold weather, it is recommended to park the vehicle in a garage, a shelter from wind/rain/snow, or cover it with thickened cotton clothes to avoid battery undervoltage nor degrade cold start capabilities of the vehicle.
- At extremely low ambient temperature (e.g. below -30°C), if it is difficult or impossible to start the vehicle, it may be not a fault in the vehicle.
- If the ambient temperature is abnormally low, it is forbidden to start the vehicle.

## Driving in hot weather

In hot weather, due to high ambient temperature, accidents are easily caused by dangerous conditions such as engine overheating and tire burst. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Choose oil and fluid (engine oil, coolant, etc.) suitable for a high temperature environment.
- Before starting the vehicle, check that tire pressure is normal.
- Before starting the engine, check that the engine's cooling fan is operating normally, the radiator is not blocked, and coolant is sufficient.
- According to travel needs, it is recommended to carry some necessary emergency supplies such as bucket, jumper cable and heatstroke prevention drug.
- Always pay attention to indications of the coolant temperature gauge during driving. If the temperature is too high, pull over safely at once in a cool place to cool the engine down. It is recommended to open the engine hood for ventilation and heat dissipation.
- After the vehicle has been running for a period of time, it is recommended to pull over safely in a cool place to prevent accidents caused by tire burst due to excessive tire pressure and high temperatures.
- If ambient temperatures are abnormally high (e.g. above 45°C), it is forbidden to start the vehicle, which may cause spontaneous combustion of the vehicle and thus personal injuries.

**Notice**

Do not operate the hood lock handle while the engine is running or just after the engine has stopped, as the hood handle is hot at this time and may cause scald. It is necessary to wait for the engine to stop and cool down before opening the hood after operating the hood interior opening handle.

# Safe parking

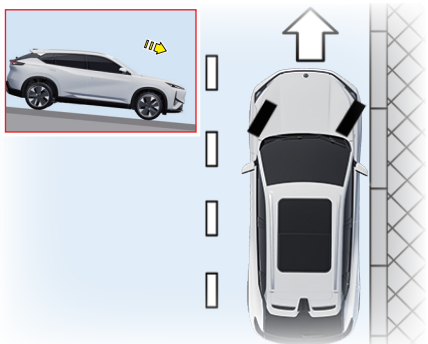
## Parking method

The vehicle shall be parked in a safe and flat area.

A correct parking method ensures that the vehicle is secured to prevent accidental vehicle sliding:

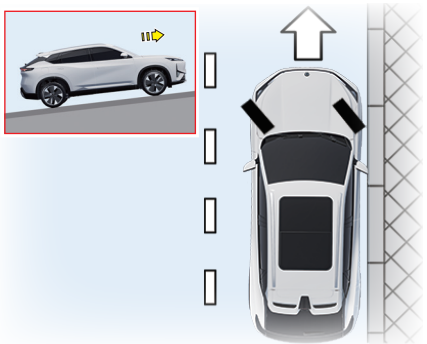
1. Park the vehicle steady, apply the parking brake, and check that the parking brake works reliably;
2. Set the shift lever to "P" position;
3. Check that all lights and other electrical appliances are turned off. Make sure that the sunroof (if equipped) and windows are closed, switch the vehicle power supply to "OFF" mode, carry the vehicle key with you, and lock all the doors;
4. When parking on a ramp, the front wheels must be turned to the edge of the road to prevent rolling with the help of curbstones;
5. During parking on a slope, the front wheels of the vehicle must be fixed with wheel chocks or similar items when the vehicle is unloaded, and all the wheels must be fixed when the vehicle is loaded.

### Parking on a downhill road with curb



Turn the steering wheel towards the curb and drive the vehicle forward until the wheels on the curb side gently contact the curb.

### Parking on an uphill road with curb

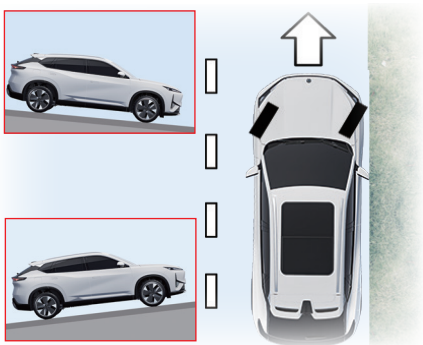


Turn the steering wheel away from the curb and drive the vehicle backward until the wheels on the curb side gently contact the curb.

**Notice**

Do not allow curbs to scrape sides of tires.

### Parking on a ramp without curb



Turn the wheels toward the roadside to prevent the vehicle from moving to the center of the road.

## Precautions for parking

**⚠ Warning**

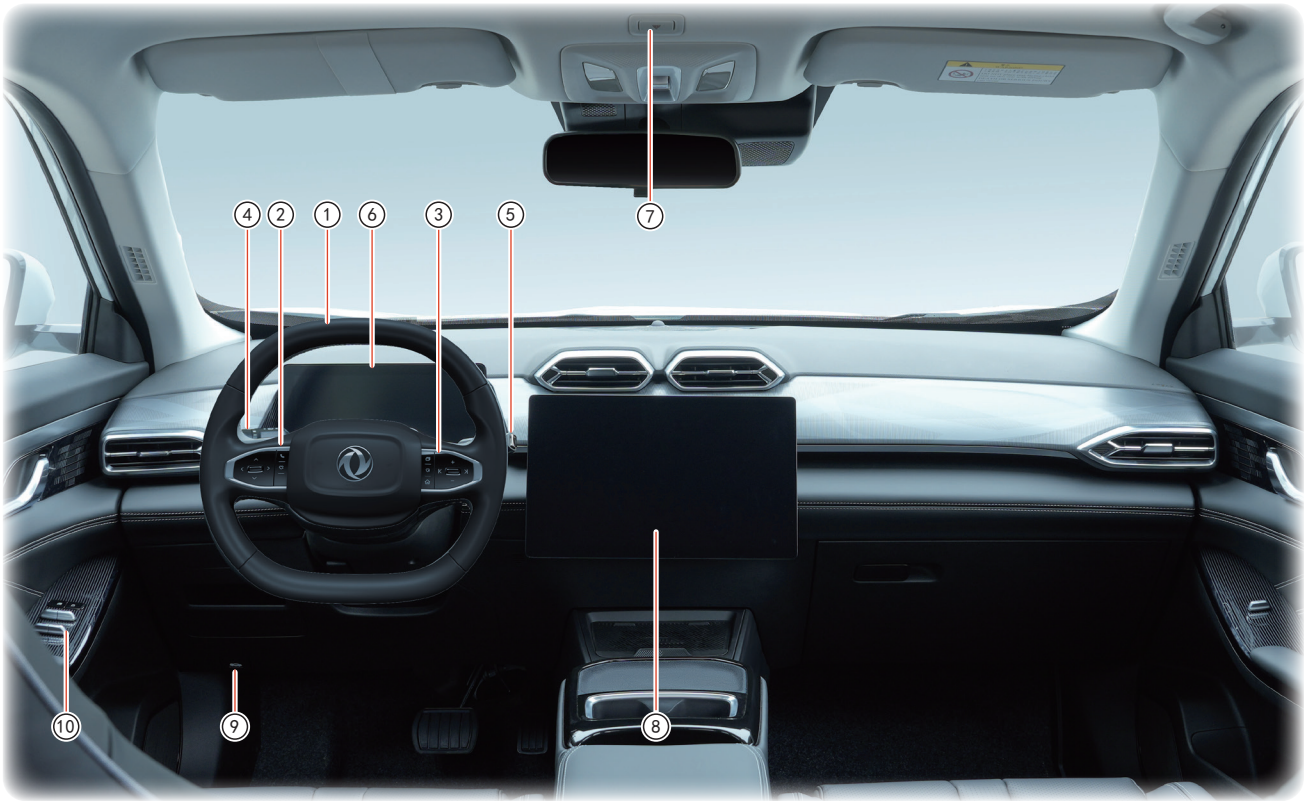
- Do not park near flammable and explosive materials to avoid fire.
- The parking brake must be applied when parking and make sure that the EPB operating status indicator (P) in the instrument cluster is illuminated. Shift the transmission to "P".
- Do not run the engine but carry the key with you when leaving the vehicle. Otherwise, people left in the vehicle may start the engine or electrical equipment accidentally, causing serious accidents.
- Never leave children or adults to be attended alone in the vehicle. Otherwise, suffocation or unintentional movement of the vehicle may occur, causing serious accidents.
- Never start the engine, turn on the A/C or heater, or stay in the vehicle for a long time when it is parked. Otherwise, you may be poisoned by exhaust gas, causing death.



**⚠ Warning**

- Do not store flammable and explosive materials such as gas lighters, matches and instrument panel wax spray tanks in the vehicle. They may explode and cause a fire when exposed to sunlight.
- Do not store canned or bottled carbonated beverages, beer, white wine, etc. in the vehicle, especially in hot summer, to avoid explosion due to heat.
- Do not place mineral water bottles or glasses with water on the instrument panel, to avoid local fires caused by exposure to sunlight.
- Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dead leaves or dry grass. Otherwise, the hot engine or exhaust pipe may ignite such flammable materials, causing a fire.

## Overview of driver's console functions



① For steering wheel, steering wheel adjustments and steering wheel buttons, refer to Page ???

② Steering wheel left buttons

③ Steering wheel right buttons

④ Light/wiper stalk

⑤ Electronic column shift lever

⑥ Instrument cluster

⑦ Hazard warning light switch

⑧ CSD

⑨ Engine hood release handle

⑩ Driver side power window regulator master switch

## Horn switch



Press and hold any one of the 3 positions as shown in the figure to sound the horn, and release it to stop sounding.

As long as the battery is not depleted, the horn can operate regardless of the mode the vehicle power supply is in.

## Steering wheel buttons*

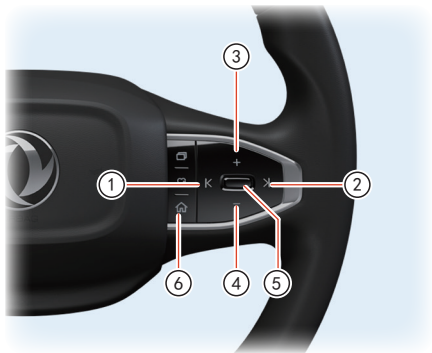
### Instrument cluster control




Press and release the page turning button ① to switch between displaying different driving information, such as trip - trip - range after charging or refueling - multimedia.

On the alarm pop-up interface of the instrument cluster, you can press the button ② to turn off the alarm pop-up.

### Multimedia control




When playing multimedia music, press the button ① to play the previous track; Press the button ② to play the next track.

Press the button ③ to increase the volume; Press and release the button ④ to lower the volume, press and hold the button ④ to mute.

Press the button ⑤ to pause/play multimedia music.

Press the button ⑥ to return to the homepage of the IVI system.

## Custom function







Press and release the button ① or button ② to perform custom button settings.

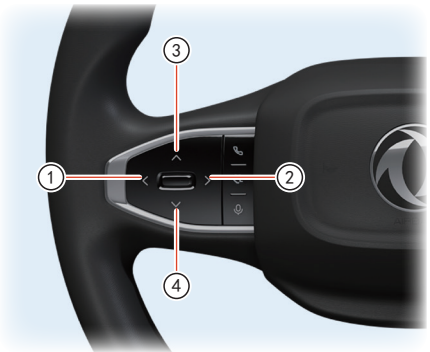
Press and hold the / button or tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Usage Preference" - "Steering Wheel Custom Button" bar on the CSD to enter the custom button function settings. The button function can be set to any of AVM assist or tailgate switch.

## Bluetooth phone/voice control




When receiving a call, press and release the button① to answer the call, press and hold the button to hang up the call; During a call, press and hold the button to hang up the phone.

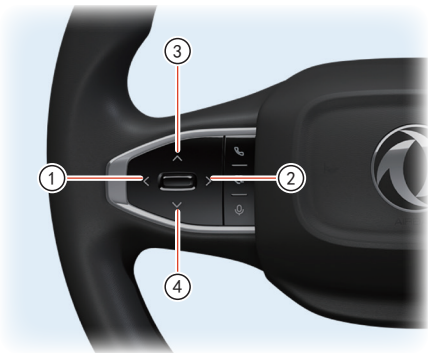
## A/C temperature and airflow control




When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) is turned off, the A/C temperature and air volume can be adjusted by operating the steering wheel buttons:

- Press the button ① to reduce the air volume;
- Press the button ② to increase the air volume;
- Press the button ③ to increase the temperature;
- Press the button ④ to lower the temperature.

## Adaptive cruise control button*




When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) or intelligent cruise assist (ICA) is in operation, the following distance and cruise speed can be adjusted by operating the steering wheel buttons:

- Press the < button (1) to reduce the following distance;
- Press the > button (2) to increase the following distance;
- Press the ^ button (3) to increase the cruise speed;
- Press the v button (4) to reduce the cruise speed.

(Please refer to page 139)

## Cruise control button*

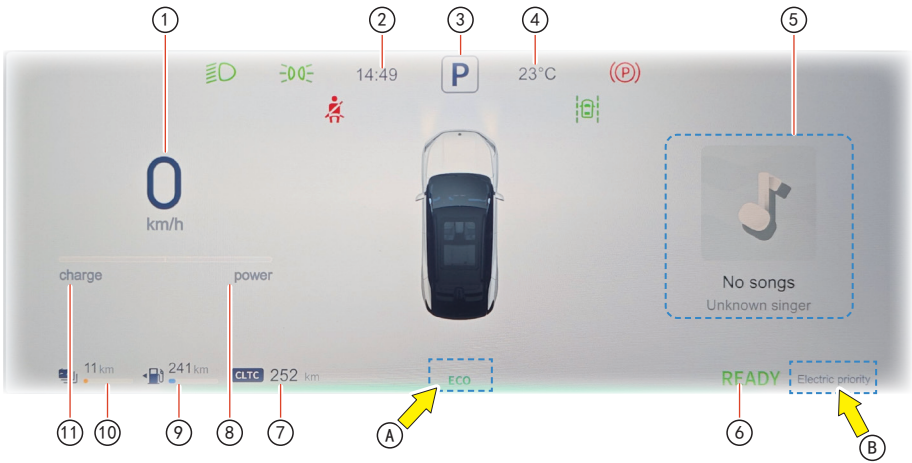



When the cruise control is in operation, the cruise speed can be adjusted by operating the steering wheel buttons:

- Press the ^ button (1) to increase the cruise speed;
- Press the v button (2) to reduce the cruise speed.

(Please refer to page 137)

## Type of instrument cluster




① Speedometer
② Time information
③ Gear display
④ Temperature information
⑤ ECU display
⑥ READY indicator
⑦ Driving range
⑧ Motor power meter
⑨ Driving range
⑩ Battery indicator
⑪ Energy feedback meter

### Driving mode display

Area Ⓐ displays the current driving mode information.

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" menu interface on the CSD, you can switch between ECO, Comfort, and Sport driving modes. After the switching of driving modes, the corresponding driving mode icon will be displayed in the area Ⓐ of the instrument cluster.

**Caution**

When switching the driving modes, the instrument cluster displays different colors according to different driving modes.

### Energy mode display

Area Ⓑ displays the current energy mode information.

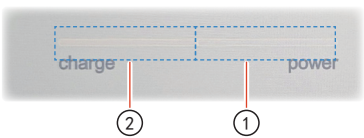
In the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" menu interface on the CSD, you can switch between pure electric priority and hybrid mode. After the switching of energy modes, the corresponding energy mode icon will be displayed in the area Ⓑ of the instrument cluster.

## Speedometer




The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed. Please keep the vehicle speed allowed by the traffic rules.

## Drive motor power and energy feedback meter




Displays the drive motor power and energy feedback meter.

The area (1) is the power consumption area of the drive motor, which indicate the power consumption percentage of the drive motor.

The area (2) is the energy feedback area, which indicates that the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into the electric energy of the high voltage battery.

## Fuel gauge




The fuel gauge indicates the approximate fuel level in the fuel tank. The triangle on the left side of the fuel gauge (as arrowed) indicates that the fuel filler is on the left side of the vehicle.

When the fuel level reaches the red zone and the low fuel level warning light is illuminated, refill the fuel as soon as possible.

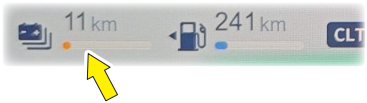
**Caution**

When the vehicle is idling in place for a long period of time, there may be a difference between the fuel gauge display and the actual fuel level.

**Notice**

Never run out of the fuel in the fuel tank. Irregular fuel supply may result in engine misfire and unburned fuel entering the exhaust system, which could damage the catalytic converter!

## High voltage battery gauge




The power meter indicates the remaining power level of the high voltage battery.

When the high voltage battery indicator displays 5% or 20%, the instrument cluster will remind the driver of the low high voltage battery; At this time, please charge it immediately, so as to prevent the vehicle stop due to insufficient power.

## Instrument cluster operation button




Press and release the page turning button ① to switch between displaying different driving information, such as trip - trip - range after charging or refueling - multimedia.

On the alarm pop-up interface of the instrument cluster, you can press the button ② to turn off the alarm pop-up.

## Switching display of ECU information

Switching display between trip - range after charging or refueling - average energy consumption - navigation - multimedia can be realized through the instrument cluster operation buttons on the steering wheel.

### Driving range and gear information



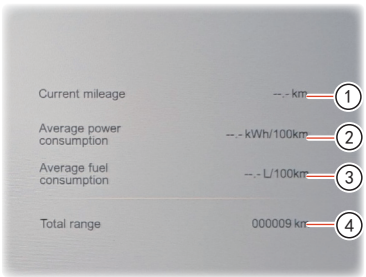

① Driving range: estimated mileage that can be continued.

② Gear:Current driving gears "P", "R", "N", "D".

**⚠ Warning**

When the gear position displayed flashes, it indicates that the vehicle is faulty, and it is necessary to pull over safely and contact a franchise store for inspection.

### Trip




① Current mileage (km)

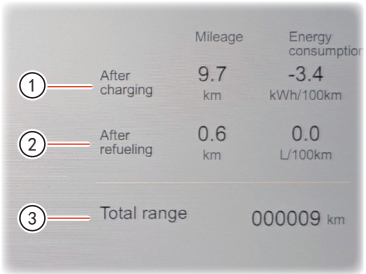
② **Average power consumption (kWh/100 km):** the average amount of electricity consumed per 100 km traveled in this trip.

③ **Average fuel consumption (L/100 km):** the volume of fuel consumed per 100 km in this trip.

④ Total mileage (km)

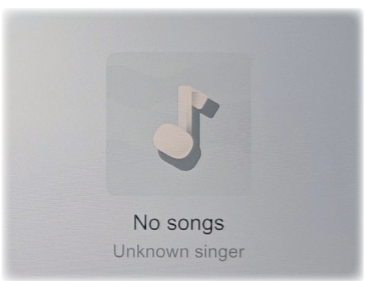
After the vehicle is powered off and sleeping for 20 minutes or after the IVI system is restarted, the trip can be cleared.

## Range after charging or refueling




① Range (km) and energy consumption (kWh/100 km) after charging
② Range (km) and energy consumption (L/100km) after refueling
③ Total mileage (km)

## Multimedia information




Display USB music-Bluetooth music playing information.

## Vehicle information display

When the vehicle is in motion, if there is an abnormality of the vehicle or the driving assist function is activated, the corresponding vehicle information may pop up on the instrument cluster.

- The right area displays Bluetooth phone, tire information, seat belt reminder, door opening, etc.;
- The central area displays driving assist, rear PDC, etc;
- The left area displays A/C air volume/ temperature adjustment information, driving assist - cruise speed/following distance setting, door opening, etc.

## Text pop-up information

The instrument cluster display shows vehicle status information in text format, such as "smart key not detected", "seat belt not fastened, please check", "tire pressure lost, please check tire pressure", etc.

## indicators and warning lights*

- ABS fault warning light
- Brake system alarm light
- Charge fault warning light
- High voltage battery fault warning light
- High voltage battery over-temperature/under-temperature warning light
- High voltage battery low level warning light
- Charging indicator
- Motor fault warning light
- System fault warning light
- EPS fault warning light
- Oil pressure alarm light
- High engine coolant temperature warning light
- Seat belt reminder indicator
- Low fuel level warning light
- SRS fault warning light
- Engine system fault warning light
- EPB MIL
- Tire pressure alarm light
- ESC fault warning light
- AEB fault warning light*
- ACC fault warning light*
- LKA fault warning light*
- LDW light*
- Charging cable connection indicator
- Standby indicator
- Limited performance indicator
- AVAS OFF indicator
- Left turn signal indicator
- Right turn indicator
- Rear fog light ON indicator
- Position light ON indicator
- Low beam ON indicator
- High beam ON indicator
- Automatic headlight ON indicator*
- ESC OFF indicator
- AEB OFF indicator*
- AUTO HOLD status indicator*
- EPB working status indicator
- HDC indicator
- ACC standby indicator*
- ACC working status indicator*
- LDW status indicator*
- LKA status indicator*
- IHBC operating status indicator*
- CC indicator

## Inspection of instrument cluster

When all doors are closed, the fuel is topped up, the parking brake is applied, the seat belts are fastened, and the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode, the following lights will stay on before the parking brake is released and the vehicle is started:



The following warning lights and indicators will be on for a short time and then go out:



When the vehicle is started and the parking brake is released, the above lights will go out, and if any of the lights stay on or flash, refer to the instructions for indicators or warning lights, and if you have any doubt, please contact the authorized dealer immediately.

### ABS fault warning light

When the vehicle power supply is set to "ON" mode, the ABS fault warning light will go on and then go out. This indicates that ABS is normal.

If the ABS fault warning light is illuminated when the engine is running or the vehicle is traveling, the ABS may be abnormal and need repair. Please go to an authorized dealer immediately for inspection and repair.

If an abnormality occurs in the ABS, the anti-lock function of the braking system stops functioning, but the normal braking function is maintained (refer to page129).

If the brake system warning light and the ABS fault warning light go on when the parking brake is released and the brake fluid is sufficient, the ABS may be not working properly (refer to page129).

### Brake system warning light

If the brake system warning light goes on, the brake fluid level is low or the brake system is faulty.

This light goes out when the engine is started and the parking brake is released to park the vehicle. Before driving, make sure that the brake system warning light is off (refer to page127). When the vehicle power supply is switched to "OFF" mode, this warning light will go on for about 15 seconds and then go off.

When the engine is running or the vehicle is traveling, and with the parking brake not applied, if the brake system warning light goes on, the brake fluid level is low.

If the brake system warning light goes on when the vehicle is traveling, stop the vehicle rapidly and safely as early as possible. Shut down the engine, and check the brake fluid level. In the case of the brake fluid level at or below the minimum mark on the reservoir, add brake fluid as required (refer to page 198).

If there is sufficient brake fluid, go to an authorized dealer immediately for braking system inspection.

**⚠ Warning**

- In the case of the brake fluid level below the minimum mark on the reservoir, please contact an authorized dealer for inspection of the brake system before driving.
- Although the state of the vehicle is judged to be safe, please tow the vehicle with another vehicle via a hard-wired towing device.
- Depressing the service brake pedal with the engine stopped or the brake fluid level low may increase the braking distance and require a larger pressing force.



**Charge fault warning light**

If the charge fault warning light goes out after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the charging system is normal.

When the DCDC malfunctions and does not work properly, this malfunction light will illuminate, in which case you should go to an authorized dealer for service.



**High voltage battery fault warning light**

When the high voltage battery malfunctions, the high voltage battery fault warning light illuminates.

If the high voltage battery fault warning light goes on during driving, it indicates that the high voltage battery system is faulty. Please go to an authorized dealer immediately for vehicle inspection.




High voltage battery over-temperature/under-temperature warning light

After the vehicle has been running for a period of time, the high voltage battery over-temperature warning light (red) lights up, indicating that the high voltage battery temperature is too high; at this time, please check whether there are sundries blocking the air inlet on the left side of the rear seat; if not, you should stop using the vehicle to ensure safety, and wait for the temperature to drop down and the fault warning light to go out before starting the vehicle; if the fault warning light does not go out, it is recommended that you contact an authorized dealer for service.

When the vehicle is started in cold state and the high voltage battery under-temperature warning light (blue) is on, it indicates that the high voltage battery temperature is too low. After the vehicle has been used normally for a period of time, the battery temperature will rise and the light will go out.

When the high voltage battery overtemperature warning light (red) is flashing and accompanied by a beep sound, it indicates that the high voltage battery is subject to thermal runaway; at this case, you should immediately turn off the vehicle power supply, get out of the vehicle, and contact an authorized dealer for service.



High voltage battery low level warning light

When the high voltage battery level is too low, the high voltage battery charging indicator stays on.



Charging indicator

Charging - the charging indicator flashes;

Charging fault - the charging indicator flashes rapidly;

Charging is completed - the charging indicator goes out.



**Motor fault warning light**

When the motor fails, the motor fault warning light will be illuminated.

If the motor fault warning light goes on during driving, it indicates that the motor system is faulty. In this case, please go to an authorized dealer immediately for vehicle inspection.



**System fault warning light**

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, if the light goes on briefly and then goes out, it indicates that the power system is normal.

If any of the following occurs, a malfunction has occurred in one of the components monitored by this indicator system:

- When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, this light is not on or stays on.
- If the light goes on while driving and the standby indicator READY goes out, the vehicle cannot be driven.

In this case, under the condition of ensuring safety, stop the vehicle immediately and contact an authorized dealer for inspection.

### EPS fault warning light

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the EPS (electric power steering system) fault warning light will go on. The EPS fault warning light will go out after the vehicle is started. This indicates that the EPS works normally.

If the EPS fault warning light goes on when the vehicle is running, the EPS may function abnormally and need repair. Please go to an authorized dealer for inspection of EPS.

If the EPS fault warning light goes on when the vehicle is running, the EPS may be inoperative, but your vehicle is still under control. In this case, operating steering wheel requires a larger force, especially during a sharp turn and driving at a low speed (refer to page 134).

### Oil pressure warning light

When vehicle power is set to "ON" position, the engine oil pressure warning light will go on.

The engine oil pressure warning light will go out after the engine is started. This indicates that the oil pressure sensor in the engine works normally. If the engine oil pressure warning light goes on or flashes when the engine is running, it indicates a low engine oil pressure. Then, stop the vehicle safely and quickly as soon as possible. Turn off the engine immediately and contact an authorized dealer.

**Notice**

- The engine will be seriously damaged if it is allowed to continue running when the engine oil pressure warning light goes on.
- The engine oil pressure warning light itself cannot indicate a low oil level. Check the oil level with the dipstick (refer to page196).

### High engine coolant temperature warning light

When vehicle power is set to "ON" position, the high engine coolant temperature warning light will not go on.

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light goes on when the vehicle is traveling, the engine coolant temperature is too high, exceeding the normal range.

**Warning**

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light goes on when the engine is running, it indicates a possible high engine coolant temperature. Let the engine idle for several minutes, and then shut down the engine and stop the vehicle. Driving the vehicle further with an overheated engine may cause serious damage to the engine.

### Seat belt reminder warning light

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the driver seat belt reminder alarm light will go on. This light will stay on until the driver seat belt is fastened properly.

For some models, the seat belt reminder alarm light will also go on when the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt. This light will stay on until the driver and front passenger have fastened their seat belts.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt hazard warning system will not send a warning signal. In this case, do not place any object on the front passenger seat, so as to avoid a false warning.

### Low fuel level warning light

If this warning light is illuminated, it indicates a low fuel level in the fuel tank which shall be topped up in time.

**Notice**

When the low fuel level warning light is illuminated, the combined display will no longer show the available mileage.

### SRS fault warning light

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the SRS performs a self-test and the airbag system fault warning light flashes for 6 seconds and then goes out. This indicates that the SRS works normally. If any of the following conditions occur, the SRS needs to be serviced. Immediately go to an authorized dealer for SRS inspection and repair if necessary. Otherwise, the SRS may not work properly.

- The SRS fault warning light keeps flashing.
- The SRS fault warning light flashes intermittently.
- The SRS fault warning light does not light up during self-check.

### Engine system fault warning light

When vehicle power is set to "ON" position, the engine system fault warning light will go on.

The light will go out after the engine is started. This indicates that the EMS works normally.

If this light goes on when the engine is running, the EMS may work abnormally and need inspection. Immediately go to an authorized dealer for system inspection and repair if necessary.

When this light illuminates, the following items shall be observed to reduce or avoid potential damage to the EMS:

Avoid a vehicle speed above 70km/h.

Avoid harsh accelerations or brake applications.

Avoid driving on a steep slope.

Avoid carrying or towing unnecessary loads.

**Notice**

If the vehicle is driven further without the EMS being properly repaired, the power performance and fuel economy will be decreased, and even the EMS be damaged, thus affecting the vehicle warranty coverage.

### EPB MIL

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the EPB fault warning light will go on and then go out.

In the event of a malfunction of the electronic parking system, this warning light will stay on and the brake system fault warning light may flash. After stopping the vehicle as quickly and safely as possible and turning off the engine, use a triangular wedge or similar to secure the wheels before contacting an authorized dealer to prevent the vehicle from skidding.

### Tire pressure warning light

When the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode, the tire pressure warning light will be illuminated briefly and then go out. This indicates that the TPMS works normally.

If this warning light stays on, the pressure in one or more of the tires is abnormal and you shall stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible to check the condition of the tires.

Refer to page 152 for more information on tire pressure.

### ESC fault warning light

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the ESC fault warning light will go on and then go out. This indicates that the ESC system works normally.

When ESC is working, the ESC fault warning light will flash 3 times per second; and when ESC neither fails nor works, the ESC fault warning light will go out.

Under severe road conditions, turning off the ESC manually will cause the ESC fault warning light to go on.

If there is no human initiative to turn off the ESC, and the ESC fault warning light stays on, the ESC may not function properly. So please go to an authorized dealer immediately to have the system inspected or repaired. (Please refer to page 131)

### AEB fault warning light*

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the AEB fault warning light will go out after the self-test is completed (about 1s).

The light will go out after the engine is started. This indicates that the AEB function is properly enabled.

If the AEB malfunction warning light stays on when the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the AEB function is malfunctioning.

### ACC fault warning light*

The ACC malfunction warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the ACC system.

If this warning light remains illuminated after restarting the engine, contact an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. (Refer to page 139 for details)

### LKA fault warning light*

The warning light illuminates when a malfunction occurs in LKA. If the warning light remains on after you restart the engine and drive the car for a certain period of time and the system self-learning has been done, contact an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. (Refer to page 147 for details)

### LDW fault warning light*

The warning light illuminates when a malfunction occurs in LDW. If the warning light remains on after you restart the engine and drive the car for a certain period of time and the system self-learning has been done, contact an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. (Refer to page 148 for details)

### Standby indicator

When the gear is in "P" (Park) or "N" (Neutral) and you depress the brake pedal and switch the vehicle power supply to the "ON" position, if the standby indicator READY goes on with a pleasant alert, it indicates the motor enters standby mode.

### Limited performance indicator

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, if the light goes on briefly and then goes out, it indicates that the power system is normal.

If the limited performance indicator goes on during driving, the power supplied to the motor will be reduced and will be insufficient when the vehicle is accelerating. Go to an authorized dealer for service in time.

### AVAS OFF indicator*

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, if the AVAS function on the CSD is turned off, the AVAS OFF indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

Turn on the AVAS on the CSD, and the AVAS OFF indicator on the instrument cluster is off at this time.

### Left turn indicator

When the steering combination switch is moved down, the left turn indicator will flash.

If it does not flash, it may be due to the indicator source burning out. You shall go to an authorized dealer to check the fault.

### Right turn indicator

When the steering combination switch is moved up, the right turn indicator will flash.

If it does not flash, it may be due to the indicator source burning out. You shall go to an authorized dealer to check the fault.

### Rear fog light ON indicator

When the rear fog lights are turned on, this indicator will go on.

### Position light ON indicator

When the position lights, instrument ambient light and button backlight are turned on, this indicator will go on.

### Low beam ON indicator

When the low beam is turned on, this indicator will go on.

### High beam ON indicator

When the high beam is turned on, this indicator will go on.

### Automatic headlight ON indicator*

When the automatic headlight ON (AHO) function is turned on, this indicator will go on.

### ESC OFF indicator

If the ESC OFF indicator stays on when the engine is running or the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the ESC function of the vehicle is deactivated, and the driver must drive the vehicle carefully.

The driver can enable or disable the ESC function through the CSD. (Please refer to page 131)

### AEB OFF indicator*

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode, the AEB OFF indicator will go out after the self-test is completed (about 1s).

If the AEB OFF indicator stays on when the engine is running or the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the AEB function of the vehicle is deactivated, and the driver must drive the vehicle carefully. The driver can enable or disable the AEB function through the settings in the CSD.

### EPB working status indicator*

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON", the indicator shall illuminate immediately. If the EPB is not activated, the light will go out after a few seconds. If the EPB is activated, the light will stay on until the EPB is released. If the light does not go on, please contact an authorized dealer for inspection. (Refer to page 127 for details)

When the EPB is activated, the red EPB ON indicator will be illuminated.

The green EPB operating status indicator goes on when the AUTO HOLD is operating.

### HDC indicator*

When the HDC is working, if the green HDC indicator goes on, the vehicle will go downhill at a constant low speed.

When the HDC is working, if the red HDC indicator is illuminated, please contact a franchise store for service.

**ACC standby indicator***

When the ACC function is in standby status, this indicator will go on.

**ACC working status indicator***

The indicator goes on when ACC is controlling the vehicle.

**LDW status indicator***

The indicator goes on when LDW is turned on in the CSD. (Refer to page 148 for details)

**LKA status indicator***

This indicator goes on when LKA is turned on in the CSD. (Refer to page 147 for details)

**IHBC operating status indicator light***

The corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster will go on when IHBC is in a different operating state:

Light up - The system is in standby;

Light up- The system is in operating state;

Light up - The system is failed;

**CC indicator**

The indicator light goes on when cruise control system is controlling the vehicle.

## Buzzer and text reminder*

### DOW buzzer

If any door is open and the vehicle speed exceeds 7km/h, the buzzer will sound to remind you to close the door properly. When the vehicle speed is less than 3km/h, the DOW buzzer will stop sounding.

### Smart key reminder by horn

The buzzer will sound if the following incorrect operations occur:

- When the vehicle power is not in the "OFF" position and the doors are locked with the request switch.

When the horn sounds, be sure to check the vehicle and the smart key.

### Driver seat belt reminder buzzer

The driver seat belt reminder buzzer will be activated when the vehicle speed is no less than 10km/h. The instrument buzzer will sound for 60 seconds and "Driver seat belt not fastened" will be displayed in the instrument cluster screen for 3 seconds, and the prompt sound will disappear if the driver seat belt is fastened or if the vehicle speed is <8km/h.

### Front passenger seat belt reminder buzzer*

If the front passenger seat is occupied with the seat belt unfastened, this reminder buzzer will be activated once the vehicle speed reaches 10km/h or above. The buzzer will sound for 60 seconds and "Passenger seat belt not fastened" will be displayed in the instrument cluster screen for 3 seconds, and the prompt sound will disappear when the front passenger seat belt is fastened or when the vehicle speed is <8km/h.

**Notice**

To avoid a false reminder (warning), do not place any object in the front passenger seat in case no passenger sits in it during driving.

### EPB fault reminder buzzer

When you do not press the service brake pedal and release the EPB switch, the buzzer sounds 1 time to remind you that you need to press the service brake pedal to release the parking brake.

### AEB reminder*

In the event that the AEB system is malfunctioning, working, or unavailable, the instrument cluster will indicate "EBA Malfunction", "FCW Malfunction", "AEB Working", "FCW Working", and "EBA Temporarily Unavailable" in turn.

When the AEB malfunctions, go to an authorized dealer for service.

### Driver seat belt reminder

If the vehicle speed is no less than 10km/h and the driver seat belt is not fastened, the instrument cluster screen will show "Driver seat belt unfastened" for 3s. In this case, the driver shall fasten the seat belt.

### Front passenger seat belt reminder*

If the front passenger seat belt is not fastened with the vehicle running at a speed ≥ 10km/h, the instrument cluster screen will show "Front passenger seat belt unfastened" for 3s. In this case, the front passenger shall fasten the seat belt.

### Vehicle start reminder

When you start the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal, the instrument cluster screen will show "Depress brake pedal for starting". In this case, you shall depress the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

When starting the vehicle with the shift lever not in "P" or "N" position, the instrument cluster screen will show **"Please start the vehicle in P or N"**. Then, you need to shift the gear to "P" or "N" first, and then depress the brake pedal to start the vehicle.

When the vehicle power supply is switched to "OFF", the instrument cluster screen will show "Please shift to P", in which case the gear shall be shifted to "P" and then the power of the vehicle shall be turned off.

### Power supply system fault reminder*

When the 12V power supply system malfunctions, the instrument cluster screen shows "Power supply system malfunction", in which case you shall go to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the power supply system serviced.

### Smart key reminder

When the instrument cluster screen will show "Smart key not in the vehicle" or "Smart key not detected", check whether the smart key is in the vehicle or whether the smart key battery is low. Please take the smart key with you or replace the smart key battery.

When the instrument cluster screen will show "Low smart key battery", please replace the smart key battery in time.

### EPB reminder

After pulling up the EPB switch, the instrument cluster screen will show "EPB activated" for 10s.

Press the EPB switch, and the instrument cluster screen will show "Depress brake pedal to release EPB". In this case, depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch, and the instrument cluster screen will show "EPB released" for 10s.

## Pedal area



① Brake pedal
② Accelerator pedal

### Check the brake pedal



If the distance is not within the following range, please go to an authorized dealer for inspection.

- Free travel of brake pedal: 5~15mm.
- Pedal force: ≤ 500N.
- Distance, L from initial position of brake pedal to floor: 100 mm.

**Notice**

- Before starting the vehicle, ensure that all pedals can be easily depressed to the end at any time and can automatically return to their original positions.
- The floor mat shall be fixed in footwell. After installation, make sure that the floor mat fits the carpet, and at the same time, ensure that there are certain distances between the floor mat and the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, so that there is no interference between the floor mat and pedals.

**⚠ Warning**

- If the service brake pedal cannot return to its normal position, contact an authorized dealer for repair.
- It is strictly prohibited to wear high-heeled shoes and slippers during driving, as heels of high-heeled shoes may prevent the brake pedal from moving to the end, and slippers may cause slippage when the brake pedal is depressed, and the maximum braking force cannot be applied in time, which is easy to cause accidents.
- Place articles that are easy to fall off, such as beverage bottle and ring-pull can, in the cup holder on the console. Otherwise, during emergency braking or bumping, they may be thrown and slip under pedals, hindering the operation on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal, resulting in serious accidents.
- When the brake pedal is depressed, if it is blocked by the floor mat or other articles, braking effects of the vehicle will be impaired, causing serious traffic accidents.
- Do not store any articles in the driver's footwell. Otherwise, they may slip to the pedal area, hindering the driver's operation on pedals. In the case of emergency braking or emergencies, once the driver cannot operate the brake pedal, it is easy to cause serious accidents.

## Vehicle start and power off

### Vehicle start



1. Carry the smart key or Bluetooth key, and unlock and open the driver door, and the vehicle can be powered on.
2. After the vehicle is powered on, close the driver door, and fasten the seat belt.
3. Depress the brake pedal, then the vehicle will start and enter the READY state, and the READY indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

### Power off the vehicle



1. After the vehicle is parked steadily, press the P button to shift the gear to P position, and the EPB will be automatically activated.
2. Unfasten the driver seat belt and open the driver door, and the vehicle will exit the READY state.
3. Get out of the vehicle and lock the door from the outside to automatically power off the vehicle.

**Notice**

- Before starting, make sure that there are no electric consumers (such as charger, digital video recorder, etc.) connected in the power outlet. Otherwise, the vehicle may not be started normally.
- With the vehicle running, when you leave the vehicle with the smart key, the vehicle can continue running. But once the vehicle is powered off, it will not be able to start again. When a different person is driving the vehicle, the smart key shall be transferred to the driver.
- After the vehicle is shut down, the cooling fan may still run for a while.

**Caution**

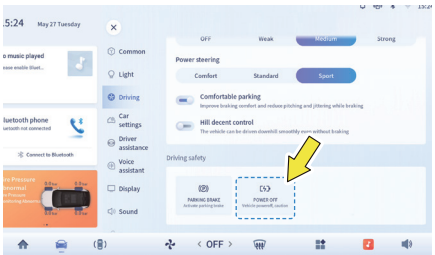
When the battery is too low to start the vehicle, try to start the vehicle with the battery of another vehicle using a jumper cable.

(refer to "Jump Start" on page176.)

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not keep the engine running for a long time in a poorly ventilated place or an enclosed room, as exhaust contains harmful gases which can make people comatose and even suffocate.
- Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the vehicle is running.

## Vehicle power off




After the vehicle is parked steadily, tap "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Power OFF" on the CSD to power off the vehicle.

## Start the vehicle in emergency mode

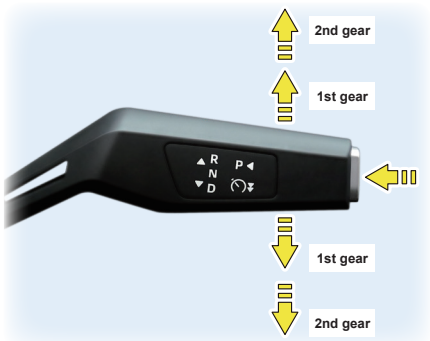


When the battery in the smart key is at low level or depleted, making it impossible to start the vehicle, the vehicle can be started in emergency mode through the following steps:

1. Place the smart key, with the button side upward and the large end toward the front of the vehicle, in the front of the storage space under the console and above the key icon;
2. Start the vehicle according to the correct starting method.

In this case, replace the battery of the smart key in time.

## Gearshift control




The vehicle is equipped with an electronic column shifter, which allows the following gear-switching control when the driver has fastened the seat belt and closed the driver door:

| Current position / Set to | P | R | N | D |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| P | - | The vehicle is stopped properly, and the P button is pressed | | |
| R | The vehicle is powered with high voltage (READY) and stopped properly and the brake pedal is depressed<br>Push the electronic column shifter upward to the 2nd gear position | - | The vehicle is powered with high voltage (READY) and stopped properly and the brake pedal is depressed<br>Push the electronic column shifter upward to the 1st gear position | The vehicle is powered with high voltage (READY) and stopped properly and the brake pedal is depressed<br>Push the electronic column shifter upward to the 2nd gear position |
| N | The vehicle is stopped properly and the brake pedal is depressed<br>Push the electronic column shifter upward to the 1st gear position and hold for more than 1s | Direct switching<br>Push the electronic column shifter downward to the 1st gear position and hold for more than 1s | - | Direct switching<br>Push the electronic column shifter upward to the 1st gear position and hold for more than 1s |
| D | The vehicle is powered with high voltage (READY) and stopped properly and the brake pedal is depressed<br>Push the electronic column shifter downward to the 2nd gear position | Allow the vehicle to be ready for high voltage connection, and stop it steadily.<br>Push the electronic column shifter downward to the 2nd gear position | With the vehicle powered with high voltage (READY), if the vehicle is traveling at a high speed, switch gears directly; if the vehicle is stopped reliably, depress the brake pedal.<br>Push the electronic column shifter downward to the 1st gear position | - |

**When the vehicle power is turned to ON and the vehicle is not in ready state, only switching between P and N is allowed:**

- Switching from P to N: When the power of the whole vehicle is switched to ON and the doors are closed or the seat belt is fastened, you can switch from P to N ; it does not respond for other gear change; when the vehicle is stationary in N, P can be engaged by pressing the P button.

**The whole vehicle power supply is switched to OFF and then automatically return to P:**

- Providing the vehicle power is turned to ON, the shift lever is in non-P position, and the vehicle speed is ≤2 km/h, if the vehicle power is switched from ON to OFF, the gear will be automatically switched to P.

**⚠ Warning**

It is prohibited to turn off the vehicle power supply, open the door and unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

**Automatically return to P gear to avoid sliding:**

- The vehicle power is turned to ON, the shift lever is in the non-P position, and the vehicle is engaged in P gear and driving at a speed ≤2km/h. At this time, when you unbuckle the driver seat belt and open the driver door, the gear will be automatically shifted to P; Before the driver door is closed or the driver seat belt is fastened, it does not respond to the gearshift request and the gear can not be moved out of P.

**Special scenario description of gearshift:**

- In general, when the driver leaves the vehicle, the vehicle gear shall remain in the P position. Otherwise, there may be a safety risk.
- If the driver needs to leave the vehicle with the gear shifted to and kept at N, he/she can switch the power of the whole vehicle to ON, insert the driver seat belt from the back, shift the gear to N, and then open the door to get out of the vehicle (automatically return to P to avoid sliding).

**Notice**

When the driver leaves the vehicle, make sure that the shift lever is in the P position. Otherwise, there may be a safety risk.

## Gear description*

### "P" (parking gear):

This position is used for parking or starting the vehicle. Make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped before setting the shift lever to the "P" position.

When the vehicle is stopped steadily, press the button P on the end of the electronic gearshift lever, so that P is engaged.

### "R" (reverse gear):

This position is used for reversing.

After the vehicle stops steadily, if you step on the brake pedal and push the electronic column shifter upward to R, the reversing light will light up automatically.

### "N" (neutral gear):

Switch into this gear when the vehicle needs to be stopped temporarily.

After N is engaged, you need to step on the brake pedal or enable the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from skidding.

### "D" (drive gear):

It is used when the vehicle is traveling forward.

## Vehicle start and stop

### Start

1. Set the shift lever to "P" or "N" position to start the vehicle;
2. Depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to "D" position, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal, and slowly depress the accelerator pedal to make the vehicle start to move forward.

### Stopping

1. For the purpose of parking, depress the brake pedal;
2. After stopping the vehicle completely, apply the parking brake;
3. Switch the gear to "P" and vehicle power to "OFF".

**⚠ Warning**

Apply the parking brake when starting the vehicle, regardless of the gear position. Otherwise, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, which could result in serious personal injury or property damage.

**Notice**

The shift lever can be set to "P" position only after the vehicle is stopped completely by depressing the brake pedal.

## Engagement of reverse gear

1. Stop the vehicle completely;
2. Depress the brake pedal, push the electronic column shifter forward to shift to "R" and then release the EPB;
3. After shifting to "R", slowly release the brake pedal and slowly depress the accelerator pedal, so the vehicle will travel in R gear. At this time:
   - The reversing lights go on.
   - The reverse camera system* or 360° AVM* is started automatically, and reversing images are displayed on the CSD screen.
   - The PDC is activated and will give the audible alarms of different frequencies when approaching an obstacle.

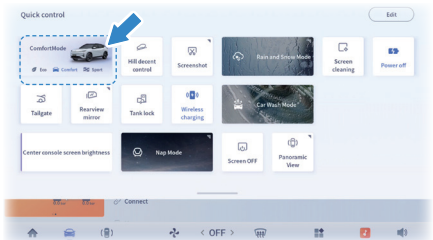
**Notice**

The brake pedal must be depressed during setting to R. Otherwise, the vehicle will not reverse even if the reverse gear is engaged, and the indicator "R" in the instrument cluster will always flash.

## Function fault reminder

If the gear position displayed on the instrument cluster flashes when the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode or the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the power system or other systems (engine, ABS/ESC, etc.) may be faulty. In this case, pull over safely and contact an authorized dealer for inspection immediately.

## Driving mode*







Tap the driving mode icon in the drop-down menu on the CSD or in the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Driving Mode" bar to switch between ECO/Comfort/Sport modes.

### ECO mode

Energy saving equilibrium state, ensuring maximum energy efficiency.

In ECO mode, the vehicle has a good driving range and is suitable for running on common urban pavements.

### Comfort mode

Balancing performance and energy consumption, providing the optimal vehicle operating efficiency.

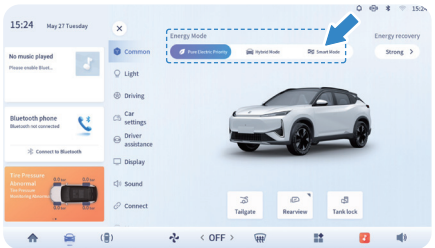
In comfort mode, the vehicle has good comfort and a smoother and more gradual acceleration response. It is suitable for running on common urban pavements.

### PERF mode

Driving performance priority, more active acceleration response.

In sport mode, the vehicle prioritizes ensuring driving power and acceleration performance.

## Energy mode*




In the "Vehicle Center" - "Common" - "Energy Mode" bar or "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Energy Mode" bar on the CSD, you can tap the Energy Mode icon to switch between pure electric priority and hybrid mode.

When the energy mode is set to "Hybrid Mode", the battery hold mode can be turned on or off. The target value of battery holding capacity can be set when battery hold mode is activated.

### ℹ Caution

- The SOC balance point for pure electric priority mode and hybrid mode is different, and the driving mode will be automatically switched under different SOC balance points. In addition, to ensure the driving experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the SOC balance point according to the altitude and ambient temperature, and the mode switch will be adjusted according to the balance point.
- In order to reduce fuel consumption of the vehicle and improve the user experience, the actual SOC in battery hold mode will be controlled within a certain range of the target SOC.

**Notice**

- During normal driving, do not rest your foot on the brake pedal, or the brake pedal may be inadvertently depressed, which will cause brake overheating, result in reduced brake efficiency, shorten the service life of brake pads and increase the fuel consumption. Brake light staying on will also cause the driver behind to misjudge the road conditions ahead.
- After driving through water, check the braking effect by depressing the brake pedal moderately to feel if the braking is normal. In case of any abnormality, with driving safety ensured, depress the brake pedal gently and frequently to dry the brake until it returns to normal.
- When driving, ensure a sufficient braking distance during emergency braking.
- Do not depress the brake pedal sharply and frequently, or the wear of brake pads may be accelerated. If the vehicle shuts down accidentally or the instrument shows faults related to brake system during driving, the vehicle cannot be decelerated or stopped unless a large force is applied to depress the brake pedal.

## Factors affecting braking effect

1. Wear

The wear of brake pads depends largely on the operating conditions and driving mode, especially for vehicles that are frequently driven, in cities and for short distances or in the sport mode. Therefore, it is essential to check the thickness of brake pads within the specified maintenance interval.

2. Wet or salt-sprinkled roads

Wet roads: During driving in accumulated water or heavy rain, or after vehicle washing, causing wet brake discs and pads, or when freezing occurs in cold winter, the braking efficiency will be reduced. In this case, depress the brake pedal lightly a few times to dry the brake and restore its performance.

Salt-sprinkled roads: During driving on salt-sprinkled roads, if the brake is not applied for a long time, there will be a salt layer on brake discs and pads and the braking efficiency will be reduced. In this case, depress the brake pedal lightly a few times to remove the salt layer from the brake discs and pads.

3. Mountain environment

Due to high mountains and long slopes in a mountainous area, the brake is applied frequently for long periods of time and often works continuously under high-intensity braking conditions, which will deteriorate the braking efficiency. Therefore, do not coast at neutral gear and avoid frequent braking during driving down a slope.

4. Snowy weather

Because of the low friction coefficient of the ice and snow road, the braking distance will be greatly extended with the increase of the speed. Please pay special attention to controlling the speed and keeping a longer safe distance from the front and lateral vehicles when driving on the ice and snow road.

5. Rust on brake disc

If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the brake discs may rust and the brake pads may be dirty. It is recommended that you drive at a low speed and apply the brake several times to clean the brake discs before formal driving.

When the rear electronic caliper is applied for parking the vehicle for a long time, rust and adhesion will occur under the humid environment. When a bang is heard if you gently step on the accelerator pedal for start, the friction linings separate from brake discs, which is a normal phenomenon.

6. Brake system fault

If you find a sudden increase in braking distance or longer brake pedal travel, the brake system may be faulty. Under the condition of ensuring safety, adjust the driving style, apply more force to the brake pedal when braking, and drive to the nearest authorized dealer at low speed.

**⚠ Warning**

When the vehicle braking is invalid completely, do not drive forcibly. In this case, pull over safely and contact an authorized dealer to wait for rescue.

7. Brake overheating

Do not place a foot on the brake pedal when braking is not required. This may cause brake overheating, reduce braking efficiency, extend braking distance and increase the wear of brake pads and discs.

## Brake wear indicator

The brake pad is equipped with an audible wear indicator. If a harsh squeak or scratch is heard when the brake pedal is depressed during driving (which is different from a braking extrusion sound generally caused by dust on the brake surface during slight braking), the brake pad needs to be replaced.

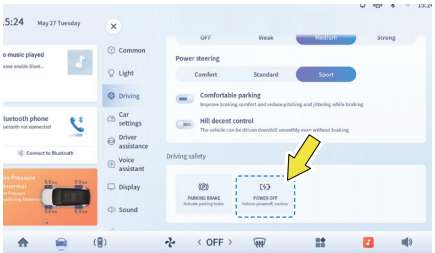
## Hydraulic brake system

The hydraulic brake system transmits hydraulic pressure to the brake through a dual circuit. If one of the circuits fails, the other circuit will continue working. In this case, drive the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer at a low speed for maintenance under the condition of ensuring safety. In this case, a greater force shall be applied to the brake pedal for braking.

## Brake system fault warning light

If the brake system fault warning light goes on during driving, it indicates that the brake system is faulty. In this case, check the brake fluid level. If the brake fluid level is normal, there is another fault in the brake system. In this case, pull over immediately under the condition of ensuring safety and contact an authorized dealer for inspection and maintenance.

## Electric park brake (EPB)




When the vehicle is in the "READY" state and the gear is shifted into/out of P, the parking brake can be automatically activated/deactivated.

The EPB switch is located in the CSD. Tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Parking Brake" icon to manually activate the parking brake.

### Manual application of parking brake

After the vehicle is parked steadily, if you tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Parking Brake" icon, the EPB working indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, and the instrument cluster will prompt the message "**EPB Activated**".

Before leaving the vehicle, please confirm that the EPB ON indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster goes on.

### Automatic application or release of parking brake

After the vehicle is parked stably, when the vehicle power supply is turned off or the gear is shifted to P, the parking brake will be applied automatically.

When the vehicle is in the "READY" state, the parking brake will be automatically released after the driver fastens the seat belt, closes the driver door and shifts the gearshift lever out of P.

Before driving, be sure that the brake system warning light is off. If there is a malfunction in the EPB or a battery failure and the parking brake cannot be released by operating the control switch, contact a franchise store for inspection.

**Notice**

- When EPB is applied or released, it is normal that you may hear motor running sound, which indicates that EPB is in normal working status.
- If there is a burning smell or noise after emergency braking, it may be caused by system failure. Please go to the franchise store for inspection.

### Circumstances where EPB shall not be applied

**Notice**

- Do not apply EPB when the vehicle is being towed.
- In icy or snowy days, there is a risk that the parking brake freezes and is difficult to be released. EPB may not be applied on flat roads, with driving safety ensured. Park the vehicle stably and fix the wheels with stoppers to ensure that the vehicle does not slide.
- Do not apply the EPB during vehicle washing in an automatic vehicle washer.

### Dynamic emergency braking

If the service brake system of the vehicle has any fault or in the abnormal or emergency situation, press and hold the P button to apply the parking brake so as to stop the vehicle. When the driver moves away his hand, parking brake is released.

**⚠ Warning**

- During driving, do not apply the parking brake except for emergency. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle brake system or danger to driving safety.
- If the parking brake warning light is still illuminated with EPB released, please go to a franchise store for systematic inspection immediately.
- When you are parking or leaving the vehicle, confirm that the parking brake is applied and that the gear is set to "P" (Parking) position.

**⚠ Warning**

- When you give the key to other people, please be sure that you tell them how to use the EPB.
- To prevent the vehicle from moving accidentally, apply the parking brake after parking.
- The parking brake shall not be applied when the vehicle is running, as it only works on the rear wheels, which may cause a much longer braking distance and easily lead to drift and dangerous accidents.

## Automatic holding(AUTO HOLD)

AUTO HOLD is a function that helps the driver to automatically realize temporary parking brake when the vehicle is in motion. The driver can activate the AUTO HOLD by depressing the brake pedal after the vehicle is parked. It is not necessary to depress the brake pedal for a long time. The system will continue to keep braking after you release the brake pedal, so that the driver has enough time to depress the accelerator pedal to start more comfortably. The use of this function on a slope also reduces the risk of skidding.

### AUTO HOLD ON

When the vehicle is in "READY" state, the left front door is closed and the driver has fastened the seat belt, slide the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Auto Hold" bar on the CSD to the right, and the Auto Hold function will be turned on.

### AUTO HOLD OFF

Slide the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Auto Hold" bar on the CSD to the left, and the Auto Hold function will be turned off.

### Activation of AUTO HOLD

Start the vehicle, close the left front door, and fasten the seat belt. After the AUTO HOLD is switched on, the vehicle speed is zero. When you depress the brake pedal, AUTO HOLD is activated and the green EPB operating indicator on the instrument cluster will light up.

When the accelerator pedal is lightly pressed, the AUTO HOLD is automatically deactivated and the green EPB indicator goes out.

If the accelerator pedal is not pressed for more than 5 minutes, the vehicle will be switched to EPB mode and the red EPB indicator will go on.

### Forced deactivation of the AUTO HOLD

The AUTO HOLD function is automatically deactivated when you unbuckle the seat belt, open the left front door or restart the vehicle.

If the AUTO HOLD has been activated, the seat belt is unfastened, the left front door is open or the vehicle power supply is turned off, apply the EPB, and the green EPB ON indicator on the instrument cluster will be switched to the red EPB ON indicator .

**Notice**

The gradient threshold range for normal operation of the AUTO HOLD function is 0 to 30%, and if this gradient threshold range is exceeded, it may not work properly.

**Warning**

- This function can only play an auxiliary role. The driver has the responsibility to pay attention to check the vehicle condition and judge whether other vehicles are skidding, and then decide whether to brake artificially.
- Use the AUTO HOLD function with caution on steep gradients and when a vehicle is before and/or behind your vehicle to avoid a malfunction that could result in an accident.

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

The ABS prevents the wheels from being locked and helps the driver to better control the direction of the vehicle during braking and prevents the vehicle from skidding on slippery roads.

### Working mode of anti-lock braking system (ABS)

It is normal that you may have a feeling of brake pedal shaking and hear a "click" sound in operation of ABS. This does not indicate a fault in the vehicle.

During emergency braking, before the vehicle stops or gets out of danger, never release the brake pedal (this is crucial!), nor depress the brake pedal repeatedly, which will cause the ABS to stop working and may increase the braking distance.

If the road is slippery, the ABS will be activated even if the brake pedal is depressed lightly, thus allowing the driver to obtain information about the road characteristics through braking and then adjust the driving mode.

**Notice**

- The functions of ABS have certain limitations. Good driving habits are the basic guarantee for safe driving. Do not drive carelessly just because the vehicle is equipped with ABS.
- To obtain the shortest possible braking distance and braking stability, the brake pedal shall be depressed as hard as possible.
- When the ABS is faulty, the conventional brake system of the vehicle can still work normally, but the function of preventing the wheels from being locked is deactivated and the braking distance may also be longer.

### ABS fault warning light

If the ABS fault warning light goes on during driving, it indicates that the braking system is faulty. In this case, you shall drive at a low speed to the nearest authorized dealer for inspection and maintenance.

## Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

The EBD automatically adjusts the distribution ratio of braking force for front and rear axles to improve the braking efficiency, shorten the braking distance to a certain extent, and improve the braking stability in coordination with ABS.

## Brake assist (BA) system

The BA system can perform auxiliary braking during emergency braking. When the driver quickly depresses the brake pedal with insufficient force in an emergency, the BA will automatically increase the braking force to shorten the braking distance.

## Brake override system (BOS)

The BOS (brake override system) is used to guarantee the braking effect of the vehicle.

If the driver applies emergency braking with the accelerator pedal suddenly stuck during driving, the BOS will work, and the engine will only run at a safe speed slightly higher than idle speed.

The BOS works only when all the following conditions are met:

1. The engine speed is greater than 1200r/min;
2. The vehicle speed is greater than 10km/h;
3. The accelerator pedal is depressed, but cannot be depressed sharply;
4. The accelerator pedal and the brake pedal are depressed successively;

When the BOS is activated, the engine will immediately return to idling condition and reduce its power output.

The BOS is automatically deactivated if any of the following conditions are met:

1. The accelerator pedal is released and then depressed;
2. The accelerator pedal is depressed sharply;
3. The brake pedal is released.

## Electronic stability control (ESC) system*

ESC (including EBD, ABS, TCS, AYC, HBA, HHC, ARP, HDC, BA, indirect TPMS) can improve the driving stability of the vehicle. For example, it can reduce the risk of sideslip during acceleration and driving on curves.

The ESC works only when the engine is running. The ESC shall be deactivated in special cases such as:

- The vehicle is running with tire chains.
- When the vehicle travels on roads covered with deep snow or on soft roads.
- When the vehicle is stuck on muddy roads, and requires to be moved back and forth.

**Notice**

The ESC has certain limitations for driving stability control of the vehicle. Even if the vehicle is equipped with ESC, the driving mode shall be adjusted at any time according to the road and traffic conditions. This is especially important for driving on slippery and wet roads. Do not risk driving just because this system improves the vehicle stability. Otherwise, there is a danger of accident!

### Activating ESC

This system will be automatically activated each time the vehicle is started, and will start working if the traction force or adhesion is in problem. When this system is activated, the ESC fault warning light on the instrument cluster will flash.

### ESC deactivation

Under certain conditions (starting the vehicle in mud, snow or soft road surface), it is required to turn off the ESC function. Then, the ESC OFF indicator on the instrument cluster will light up. The methods and steps are as follows:

- Slide the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "ESC" bar on the CSD to the left, and the ESC function will be turned off.

**Caution**

When the vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h, it will not be possible to turn off the ESC.

### ESC recovery

The ESC function can be recovered after deactivation by any of the following means:

- The ESC will be automatically recovered when SSB is set to "OFF" position and the vehicle is restarted.
- Slide the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "ESC" bar on the CSD to the right, the ESC function will be turned on, and the ESC OFF indicator on the instrument cluster will go out.

### ESC fault

If the ESC fault warning light on the instrument cluster stays on and the ESC OFF indicator does not light up when the vehicle is driving normally, it indicates an ESC malfunction. So please go to an authorized dealer for repair.

## Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)*

This system can assist the driver in emergency braking. It determines whether it is necessary to carry out full braking based on the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal. As long as the driver depresses the pedal to the end all the time, the system will automatically increase the braking force to the threshold at which the ABS is activated. If the driver releases the brake pedal, the HBA will reduce the braking force to the specified value.

The HBA can shorten the braking distance substantially, and the driver is nearly unaware of its operation.

## Hydraulic brake boost (HBB)*

When the boost effect produced by the auxiliary system cannot achieve the deceleration expected by the driver, the function can actively pressurize the brake wheel cylinder through the ESC to help the driver achieve the expected braking deceleration, ensuring the driving safety.

When the HBB is activated, clicks produced during operation of the ESC hydraulic pump can be heard in the cab, accompanied by brake pedal shaking and certain pedal sinking, which is normal.

## Hill hold control (HHC)*

The HHC increases the convenience of parking and starting on a slope.

It is enabled by default. On a slope with a gradient of 4%-30%, the system will automatically keep the vehicle braked for 1.5 s after the brake pedal is released to prevent the vehicle from sliding. In this case, the driver shall depress the accelerator pedal quickly to start the vehicle smoothly.

The HSA will not be activated in the following situations:

- The vehicle is started on a level road or along the downhill.
- The shift lever is in "N" position.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) is faulty.

**Caution**

In the short period of time when the vehicle is first started, as the ESC system is in the process of self-test, the instrument cluster may display "Hill Start Assist Failure", which is a normal phenomenon and has no effect on the HSA system.

**Notice**

- The HHC will keep the vehicle still on the slope within 1.5 s and stop braking. If the driver fails to depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal in time, the vehicle may slide, resulting in accidents or personal injuries.
- The driver shall move his or her foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal timely to drive the vehicle forward.

## Traction control system (TCS)*

The traction control system can restrain wheel slipping, and will be enabled when the vehicle is started.

When the vehicle is started by depressing the accelerator pedal to the end or accelerated suddenly on roads with low adhesion coefficient, unacceptable slipping (idling) may occur to the drive wheel, and the TCS can control the dynamic performance of vehicle through the intervention of the EBD.

- To disable the traction control system, press the ESC OFF button, after which the ESC OFF indicator will go on, indicating that the ESC is deactivated.
- To enable the traction control system, press the ESC OFF button again.

## Hill descent control (HDC)*

The HDC function can be used to limit the speed of the vehicle during descents in the low speed range, so that the vehicle speed will not exceed the upper speed limit set by the driver when descending steep slopes.

### HDC indicator

— When the HDC indicator lights up in green, it indicates that the function is ready.

— When the HDC indicator is illuminated in yellow, it indicates that the system is faulty. In this case, please contact a franchise store as soon as possible.

### Use of HDC function

When HDC is enabled by sliding the slider in "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "HDC" bar on the CSD to the right, the HDC indicator on the instrument cluster goes on to indicate that the function has been turned on.

When the function is turned on, if the vehicle enters a downhill slope, the driver can release the accelerator or brake pedal, and the system will automatically limit the vehicle speed to the speed at the moment the pedal is released. If the driver presses the brake or accelerator pedal during the process, as long as the speed is still within the operating speed range of the system, the speed after the pedal is released is the target speed controlled by the HDC.

**Notice**

- When HDC works, the driver shall still pay close attention to the road surface and be ready to intervene at any time to avoid danger.
- The working speed range of HDC is 6~35km/h, and the function will be deactivated when it exceeds this range.

## Active rollover protection (ARP)*

The active rollover protection (ARP) is an active safety protection, which reduces the risk of potential rollover when a vehicle steers quickly or steadily.

**Warning**

The active rollover prevention (ARP) feature increases the safety of normal driving, but the driver must not conduct dangerous driving actions (e.g. fast cornering, speeding, etc.) so as to avoid harm.

## Electric power steering system

The electric power steering system (EPS) is designed to provide steering assist under various road conditions during steering according to the vehicle speed and the steering wheel turning speed, and reduce the disturbance to the steering system caused by uneven roads. It can not only reduce the steering force during driving at a low speed, but also greatly improve the maneuvering stability during driving at a high speed.

Performing too frequent steering operations or giving the steering wheel a constant maneuvering force while the wheel rotation is blocked in the parking mode may cause the EPS system to enter the thermal protection mode. When the EPS system enters the thermal protection mode, the system assistance will be reduced and it become laborious to operate the steering wheel, especially in parking mode or at low speeds. When the EPS system temperature returns to outside of the thermal protection temperature range, the steering assistance will return to normal.

When the vehicle is in READY state, the EPS fault warning light stays on, indicating that the EPS is not working properly. Please contact a franchise store to check the EPS.

**Notice**

If the EPS fault warning light goes on when the vehicle is in READY state, the EPS may be inoperative, but your vehicle is still under control. In this case, operating steering wheel requires a larger force, especially during a sharp turn and driving at a low speed.

**Warning**

- If the EPS fault warning light goes on when the vehicle is in READY state, the EPS will stop working, but your vehicle is still under control and a larger force is required to control the steering wheel. At this time, you shall drive off the highway, pull over, and contact a franchise store for repair and treatment.
- When the steering system malfunctions, please contact a franchise store immediately for inspection and repair. Even if you do not feel any difference during steering, there may be a serious problem with the system that causes steering failure, etc.

### Electric Power Steering Force Setting

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Steering Assist" bar on the CSD, you can set the steering assist mode:

- Comfort: light steering wheel.
- Normal: Applicable to general driving habits.
- Sport: heavy steering wheel.

## Multi-mode drive system operating mode

The multi-mode drive system can realize three drive modes: pure electric driving, hybrid driving, and engine-driven driving. During driving, the vehicle can automatically switch between different drive modes through the system's comprehensive judgment to achieve optimal dynamics and economy.

### Pure electric drive

When the battery power is sufficient and the vehicle speed is low, the vehicle will be driven in pure electric mode, and the high voltage battery will provide electric energy to the motor to drive the vehicle.

In pure electric priority mode, if the SOC is low, the engine will start to charge the battery, or manually switch to hybrid mode to charge the battery.

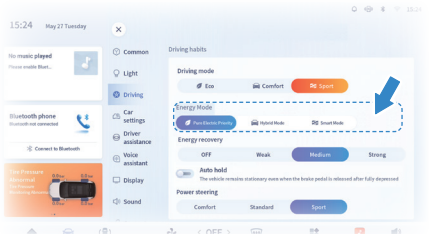
### Hybrid drive driving

When the battery power is low, the vehicle will be driven in hybrid driving mode, in which the vehicle is mainly driven by the motor and the engine supports electricity generation.

### Engine-driven driving

When the vehicle speed is high, the vehicle will be driven in engine-driven mode, which is mainly driven by the engine directly, and when the vehicle is accelerating, the motor can carry out auxiliary drive.

## Energy feedback




The vehicle has an energy feedback function. When the vehicle is in the process of braking or coasting, energy feedback will occur.

- Tap the "Vehicle Center" - "Driving" - "Energy Feedback Intensity" bar on the CSD in sequence to set the energy feedback intensity (off/weak/medium/strong).

**Notice**

- Please select the energy feedback intensity according to your driving habits, but excessive energy feedback will affect the power output of the vehicle.
- On icy roads, for your safety, please select the low-power coasting energy feedback function and drive carefully.

# AVAS*

The vehicle is equipped with the AVAS. When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the AVAS mounted on the front of the vehicle will emit a warning tone to alert pedestrians or vehicles in the vicinity to reduce the probability of an accident.

## Function activation

The AVAS is turned on by default when the vehicle is started:

- When you set the gearshift lever to D/N, no sound is emitted if the vehicle speed is 0~1km/h;
- When you set the gearshift lever to D/N, warning tone is emitted if the vehicle speed is 1~30km/h;
- When you set the gearshift lever to R, warning tone is emitted if the vehicle speed is 0~10km/h;
- The warning sound automatically stops when the vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h.

**Notice**

When the vehicle is in motion, if the AVAS is turned on but no warning tone is heard at the front of the vehicle, you should stop the vehicle immediately under the condition of ensuring safety and contact a franchise store to check the vehicle.

## Function setting

AVAS ON/OFF settings can be made on the CSD. The steps are as follows:

- You can tap the "AVAS" icon on the CSD to turn on/off the AVAS function.

The AVAS OFF indicator  on the instrument cluster lights up when the AVAS function is turned off.

**Notice**

The AVAS is only allowed to be switched off if there are no pedestrians within a short distance of the vehicle and the surroundings clearly do not require the AVAS warning tone.

## Cruise control*

The cruise control system is a system that controls the accelerator pedal by using an electronic program to keep the vehicle running at a constant speed automatically. When the cruise control function is activated during long-distance driving on an expressway, the driver can keep the vehicle running at the set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal, thus reducing the driving fatigue and improving the driving comfort.

Cruise control conditions:

- To enable the cruise control, the vehicle speed shall be 40~175km/h;
- There is no condition that deactivates the cruise control (such as depressing the brake pedal);
- The cruise control function must be activated;
- The brake pedal is depressed once before activation.

When the vehicle is in cruise control, if ESC, EPB and AEB intervene, the vehicle will automatically exit cruise control.

### ⚠ Warning

- During driving on congested roads, in windy areas, on winding or steep roads, or on slippery roads such as rainy, snowy or icy roads, do not activate the cruise control function, for fear of an accident due to loss of control of the vehicle.
- The set cruise speed and distance to the vehicle in front must be adapted to the traffic conditions at that time. The cruise control is only a driving assist system and shall be used with caution.
- Do not use cruise control when driving in roadless areas or on unpaved roads. This function is only available on hard paved roads. Otherwise, it could cause an accident.
- The vehicle speed shall be set according to the road, traffic and weather conditions at that time, and shall not be too high. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- The cruise control shall be disabled in time after use.

### ℹ Caution

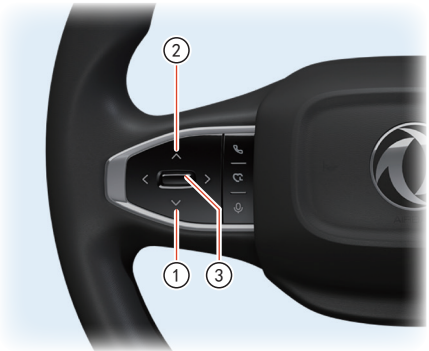
During downhill driving, the cruise control cannot keep the vehicle at a constant speed, and the vehicle accelerates according to its own weight. In this case, please depress the brake pedal.

### Steering wheel control




#### Enabling cruise control

It the column shift control switch is turned downward providing all other activation conditions for cruise control are met, the cruise control will be activated and the cruise control indicator (blue) 120 will be illuminated. Release the accelerator pedal, after which the vehicle enters the cruise control status.




### Setting cruise speed

- Press the button (1) to reduce the cruise speed.
- Press the button (2) to increase the cruise speed.

### Overtake

To overtake, depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate beyond the cruise speed. The cruise control indicator (blue) 120 flashes at this time. Press the button (3) to cruise at the overtaking speed.

**Notice**

The vehicle may not keep running at the set speed during going up or down a steep slope. In such cases, disable the cruise control.

### Pausing cruise control

In cruise control state, gently depress the brake pedal to bring the cruise control into cruise control pause state.

### Resetting cruise control

If the column shift control switch is pressed downward in cruise control pause status, the cruise control state will be re-activated, and the cruise speed will return to the value saved before the cruise control is paused.

### Deactivating cruise control

If the column shift control switch is pressed upward in cruise control, cruise control pause or cruise control readiness state, the cruise control will be deactivated, and the cruise control icon at the lower right of the instrument cluster will disappear.

At this time, to activate the cruise control again, reset the cruise control.

## ACC*

ACC is a driving assist function used to actively control the vehicle speed, which monitors the running status of the vehicle ahead through intelligent driving assist sensors, and actively controls the speed of the subject vehicle for automatic following cruise.

Turning on the ACC system allows the cruise control of the vehicle at a speed of 30km/h to 150km/h, or the following cruise at a speed of 0km/h to 150km/h.

If the target vehicle is detected to slow down or a new target vehicle appears with a lower speed than the subject vehicle's cruising speed, ACC will slow down the vehicle to maintain a safe distance from the target vehicle or the new target. When the target vehicle accelerates or the target vehicle leaves the running path of the subject vehicle, the system will control the vehicle to accelerate and keep running within the set speed.

### ⚠ Warning

- The system may require to exit when faced with certain complex traffic scenarios that cannot be handled. So the driver shall always stay alert.
- The set cruise speed and distance to the vehicle in front must be adapted to the traffic conditions and outside environment at that time. The adaptive cruise control (ACC) is only a driving assist system and shall be used with caution.

### Notice

- The ACC system is a driving assist system designed to enhance driving comfort, but it cannot replace the driver in driving. Even when the ACC system is active, the driver must drive carefully, maintain control of the vehicle at all times, and is required to obey traffic rules.
- Depressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving causes the ACC system to exit immediately.
- In some cases (excessive relative vehicle speed in front of you, sudden lane change or too small a safety distance, etc.), the system may not have enough time to reduce the relative speed. In such cases, the driver must react promptly.
- When the ACC system is in operation, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal. The distance control function of the ACC system will not be activated.
- The ACC system will not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- The ACC system is suitable for use on highways and roads with good road conditions, and is not suitable for use on complex urban roads, mountain roads, ramps, or in tunnels.
- The ACC system will recognize cars, trucks, motorcycles and other motor vehicles as following targets and slow down as appropriate, but cannot recognize pedestrians or other obstacles on the road.
- Target selection may be delayed or disturbed when the car is entering or exiting curves. The ACC system will likely not brake the car as expected or brake it too late in these situations.
- If the distance between your vehicle and the adjacent lane is too small (or if a vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to your vehicle lane), there is a possibility of reacting to the adjacent vehicle and braking your vehicle.
- If a vehicle changes lanes into the path of your vehicle and is recognized as a target vehicle within the detection range of the ACC system, the system may react to it, which may lead to violent braking or untimely braking; at this time, the driver should take over the vehicle in time to avoid a traffic accident.
- When encountering heavy rain, snow, and other situations, the detection of camera sensors may be interfered with, and the ACC system will automatically exit.
- When the vehicle stops in reference to the vehicle in front of you, in rare cases, the system will not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but can only recognize the end of the lower part of the target (e.g. the rear axle of a truck with a large-ground-clearance chassis or the bumper of a vehicle). The system will not be able to guarantee the proper stopping distance and the driver must be alert and ready to brake at all times.

**Notice**

- It is prohibited to change the position of the forward looking camera without authorization. If the position of the camera is changed due to a collision, etc., please contact a franchise store.
- Due to physical limitations, the ACC system cannot guarantee safe and reliable operation under all circumstances. Contact a franchise store if you have any questions about this function.
- Dirty or covered sensors can limit vehicle recognition. Do not cover the sensor detection area, but always keep the camera sensor and the windshield in interior rearview mirror area clean.
- When driving on congested roads, winding or steep roads, or on slippery roads in rainy, snowy or icy weather or in roadless areas or on unpaved sections, do not activate the ACC.

- ACC is a driving assistance function, mainly suitable for comfortable driving rather than for braking or emergency braking. It can not replace the driver for driving. The driver takes all responsibilities for vehicle control, and should drive in a standardized manner according to laws and regulations, and must maintain supervision and control over the vehicle when ACC is applied.
- ACC responds to vehicles that are driving in the same direction in front and are loading regular-shape goods (excluding irregular trucks and special-shaped vehicles). It does not work on crossing vehicles, vehicles making a U-turn, and oncoming vehicles. It does not have enough time to reduce relative speed to vehicles that slowly cut into the lane at a closer distance, stationary vehicles in front, and vehicles running in front at a low relative speed, in which case the driver must take over the vehicle in time. ACC does not work on pedestrians, animals, Special-shaped vehicles, and objects other than vehicles on the road, such as trees, cones, warning signs, water safety barriers, guardrails, stones, cardboard boxes, and objects scattered on the road.
- It is not recommended to use the intelligent driving assistance function in direct sunlight, backlight or when entering and exiting tunnels, or driving at night, in rain, snow, or fog.
- Situations for example, the instrument cluster keeps prompting "activation conditions are not met" when activating ACC in rainy and snowy days, foggy days and under other poor weather conditions or the system automatically prompts "take over the vehicle" with ACC activated and then the function automatically exits, are not faults, but active protection measures taken by the sensor when it detects reduced performance in poor weather conditions. This can avoid accidents such as misidentification, false braking or late braking due to limited sensor identification under poor weather conditions.

## ACC activation conditions

ACC can be activated when the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is started;
- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is engaged in D gear;
- The vehicle does not slip back;
- All doors, the engine hood and the tailgate are closed;
- The driver seat belt is fastened;
- There is no abnormal alarm information on the instrument cluster;
- The brake pedal is not depressed when the vehicle is not stationary;
- The brake pedal is depressed when the vehicle is stationary;
- There are no other ACC system inhibit conditions.

## ACC indicator

— When the ACC indicator is not illuminated, it indicates that the function is turned off.

 — When the ACC indicator is illuminated in gray, it indicates that the function is to be activated.

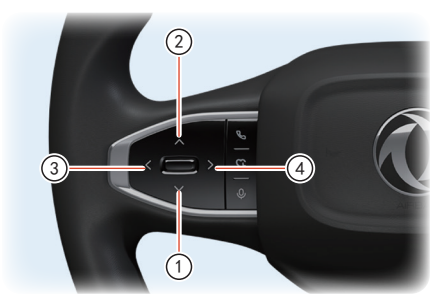
 — When the ACC indicator lights up in blue, it indicates that the function is activated.

 — When the ACC fault warning light is illuminated in red, it indicates that the system is faulty. In this case, please contact a franchise store as soon as possible.

## Function and operation




When the ACC system meets all other activation conditions, the ACC indicator (gray) (80) will light up on the instrument cluster display. At this time, turn the column shift control switch downward, the ACC system will be activated, and the ACC indicator (blue) (80) will light up.

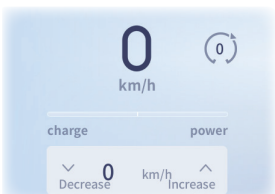



### Set speed

When the ACC system is activated, use the following method to reset the cruise speed:

- Press the button (1) to reduce the cruise speed;
- Press the button (2) to increase the cruise speed.

When setting the cruise speed, the cruise speed setting information will be displayed on the lower left side of the instrument cluster:




### Set the inter-vehicle time distance

When the ACC system is activated, use the following method to reset the following distance:

- Press the button (3) to reduce the following distance;
- Press the button (4) to increase the following distance.

When setting the following distance, the following distance setting information will be displayed on the lower left side of the instrument cluster:




**Caution**

The following distance has a memory function. After the ACC system is reactivated, the following distance will be set to the previously set value.

### Car-following start/stop of ACC

When the vehicle is running in ACC, after following the vehicle ahead unit the subject vehicle stops:

- If the vehicle ahead leaves within the follow-stop time (3s/30s/100s, which can be set on the CSD), the subject vehicle can automatically follow the vehicle ahead;
- If the follow-stop time exceeds the set value but does not exceed 5 minutes, after the vehicle ahead departs, a window for start will pop up, and you should depress the accelerator pedal or press the ^ button ③ on the steering wheel according to the instructions in the window to reactivate the ACC so that the subject vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead. If the above operation is not performed, the vehicle will remain in a stopped state;
- If the follow-stop time exceeds 5 minutes, the ACC system will enter the ready state, the EPB will be automatically activated, and the vehicle will keep in P gear.

### Setting of ACC follow-stop time:

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Assisted Driving" - "Smart Recognition" - "ACC Follow-stop time" bar on the CSD, you can set the ACC follow-stop time (3s/30s/100s).

### Exiting ACC

When the ACC system is in operation, depress the brake pedal to exit the ACC, the ACC system will be in the ready state, and the driver needs to take over the vehicle immediately.

### Resuming ACC

If the ACC is in the exit or ready state, when the ACC activation conditions are met, turn the column shift control switch downward or press the ^ button ③ on the steering wheel, and the ACC will be reactivated.

### Turning off ACC

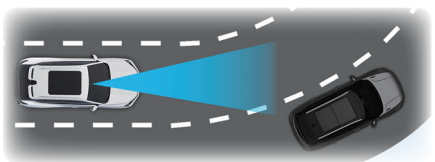


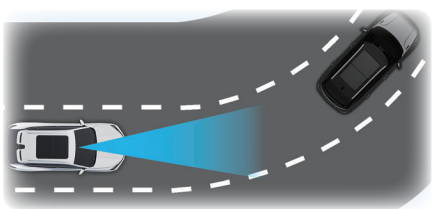

When the ACC system is in operation, turn the column shift control switch upward, and the adaptive cruise control will be turned off.

### Situations in which the ACC function is limited

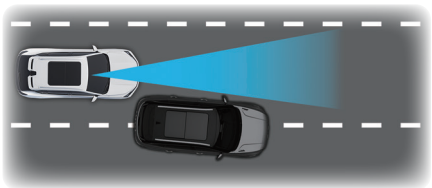
ACC camera and sensor have a limited detection range. In some cases, the sensor may fail to detect the vehicle ahead, or there may be a delay in detecting the vehicle ahead.

Under the following conditions, sensor detection problems may occur, resulting in a delayed response from the ACC system or unintended braking.

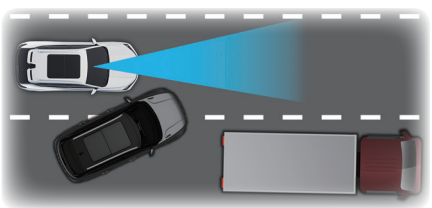




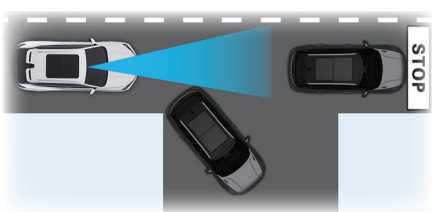
1. Before entering a curve or while driving in a curve, the ACC system may incorrectly recognize vehicles ahead in other lanes or fail to recognize vehicles in the current lane;



2. When the vehicle ahead has less conflict with the subject vehicle, it may be outside the detection range and may not be recognized by the ACC system;



3. A vehicle ahead is changing to the lane of the subject vehicle;




4. The vehicle ahead is entering a curve or in a stopped state;



5. When the vehicle is driving on a slope, the ACC system may not be able to detect vehicle in the same lane.
6. The ACC system may not be able to recognize a vehicle traveling in the opposite direction to the subject vehicle;
7. The ACC system may not be able to recognize a stationary vehicle lying horizontally ahead, or a vehicle crossing horizontally/diagonally.

In addition to the above, drivers using the ACC system should be alert and ready to take over the car and, if necessary, turn off the ACC system if they encounter any of the following situations:

- The vehicle is approaching the vehicle in front too quickly or the vehicle in front brakes suddenly, or the ACC system cannot apply enough braking force.
- The vehicle encounters a vehicle with a high ground-clearance chassis such as a truck or trailer.
- When the vehicle is traveling in tunnels, the camera sensor will be affected adversely in respect of performance and may not be able to detect vehicles farther away or work reliably.
- The sensor detection performance will be affected by inclement weather such as fog, heavy rain, snow and sandstorms.
- When the road friction coefficient is low, rapid changes in tire traction can cause the vehicle to skid.
- When the lighting conditions around the vehicle are not good (insufficient or excessive light), the sensor detection performance will be affected.
- The sensor may be interfered with when there are objects such as tracks, metal plates, etc. in front of the road.
- Collision, severe vibration, etc. of the vehicle may lead to change of sensor position.
- The system cannot recognize objects loaded by a vehicle ahead that protrude from the side or rear end of its body.

## Forward collision warning (FCW)*

FCW monitors the collision risk between the subject vehicle and objects such as pedestrians and vehicles in front through intelligent driving sensors. When there is a risk of collision, the vehicle will emit an audible and instrument cluster pop-up alarm to alert the driver to apply brake and avoid collision.

The function is effective within a speed range of 5~130 km/h for vehicles stationary or traveling in the same direction ahead, and 5~80 km/h for pedestrians.

**⚠ Warning**

- The FCW cannot replace the driver to control the vehicle, but can only assist the driver in judging the distance of the subject vehicle from the target behind. For some emergencies, it may not be possible to judge in time (such as sudden braking or changing lane of the vehicle ahead), and the driver needs to observe road traffic conditions at all times and always be responsible for safe driving.
- It is strictly forbidden for the driver to actively test the FCW function to avoid unnecessary injury or even death.

### Turning on/off FCW

You can tap the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Assisted Driving" - "Warning Assist" - "FCW" bar on the CSD to turn on/off the FCW function. After the function is activated, the sensitivity of the forward collision warning (low/medium/high) can be adjusted according to personal driving habits. After the vehicle is restarted, FCW is enabled by default.

### Mode of FCW

When the system determines that a collision may occur, it will trigger a collision warning, and the instrument cluster will emit visual and audible alarms to remind the driver to take timely measures, maintain a safe distance, and avoid collisions.

**Notice**

- FCW is a safe driving assist function, and it is recommended that you do not turn off this function when driving normally.
- FCW may be triggered by objects with shapes or features similar to vehicles, pedestrians or two wheeled vehicles.
- FCW is only applicable for warning of frontal collisions, and the function will not be triggered when the vehicle is in R gear.
- The following operations may cause FCW not to work, including but not limited to:

– The driver applies the brake before FCW is triggered. No alarm will be issued.
– The driver forcefully depresses the accelerator pedal when FCW is triggered. No alarm will be issued.
– The driver forcefully turns the steering wheel when FCW is triggered. No alarm will be issued.

**Notice**

- FCW may not work properly in the following cases:
  - In bad weather (such as rainstorm, heavy snow, hail, etc.).
  - In case of moisture or frost on the windshield.
  - When the temperature around the front camera is too high or too low.
  - When the surrounding environment is too bright or too dark (at night, in tunnels, etc.).
  - On complex roads (such as road guardrails, tunnel entrances, curves, uneven roads, etc.).
  - Other environmental factors (such as electromagnetic field interference, high or low ambient temperature).
  - When the vehicle accelerates or steers sharply.
  - When the vehicle is running on a curve.
  - When the rear of the vehicle ahead is small or cannot be seen normally.
  - Vehicles running in the opposite direction of the subject vehicle in the same lane or crossing the same lane.
  - A person or animal suddenly intrudes ahead.
- If the surface of the smart front-view camera on the front windshield is dirty, obstructed, bumped or damaged, the detection of road conditions ahead will be affected. You should handle with this situation promptly.

## Automatic emergency braking (AEB)*

The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system detects the information of pedestrians, cyclists, vehicles and other targets ahead through intelligent driving sensors. When there is an emergency collision risk ahead of the vehicle during driving, if the driver does not brake, the system will automatically apply emergency braking; If the driver brakes but the braking force is insufficient, the system will assist the driver in braking to avoid or mitigate the collision.

The function is effective within a speed range of 5~130 km/h for vehicles ahead, and 5~80 km/h for pedestrians.

**Warning**

- AEB cannot detect all obstacles, nor control the vehicle on behalf of the driver, and can only assist the driver in braking the vehicle. The driver needs to observe road traffic conditions at all times and always be responsible for safe driving.
- It is strictly forbidden for the driver to actively test the AEB function to avoid unnecessary injury or even death.

### AEB indicator



— When the AEB OFF indicator is illuminated, it indicates that the function is turned off.


— When the AEB fault warning light is illuminated, it indicates that the function is faulty. In this case, please go to a franchise store for service as soon as possible.

### Turning on/off AEB

You can tap the slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Assisted Driving" - "Warning Assist" - "AEB" bar on the CSD to turn on/off the AEB function.

After the vehicle is restarted, AEB is enabled by default.

## AEB working status

### Brake preparation

When the system judges that the current situation is urgent, it will prepare the driver for braking. Besides, it will automatically reduce the gap between the brake pad and the brake disc (this process may produce a slight braking motion).

### Emergency brake assist (EBA)

If the driver has taken braking measures in an emergency, but the braking force is insufficient, AEB will provide a certain amount of additional braking force to achieve the better braking effect and avoid or reduce the damage caused by the collision.

### AEB

If the driver fails to respond to the emergency and the dangerous situation escalates further, AEB will be activated. The system will apply braking force within its capacity to avoid or reduce the damage caused by the collision to a certain extent.

## Functional limitations

- AEB may be restricted or not work properly in situations including but not limited to:
- Passing through complex road surfaces (such as curves, uphill/downhill, expressway ramps, railway crossings, toll stations, slippery roads, congested roads, snow-covered roads, ice-covered roads, road joints, curbs, complex pedestrian crossings, etc.).
- When the subject vehicle accelerates or decelerates or steers sharply.
- When the vehicle ahead suddenly brakes or changes lanes.
- When the rear of the vehicle ahead is small or cannot be seen normally.
- Vehicles running in the opposite direction of the subject vehicle in the same lane.
- Vehicles crossing the same lane.
- Static vehicles on highways or urban expressways.
- A person or animal suddenly intrudes ahead.
- In bad weather (such as fog, haze, rain, heavy snow, hail, etc.);
- Insufficient light in the surrounding environment (such as dawn, dusk, night, tunnel, etc.);
- Other environmental factors (such as strong light, disorderly night lights, electromagnetic field interference, high or low ambient temperature, etc.).
- Moisture, frost, dirt, obstruction, bumps or damage on the surface of the intelligent driving sensor at the front bumper or front windshield.
- Unauthorized removal & refitting or alteration of the position of intelligent driving sensors, resulting in strong vibrations or slight impacts that affect sensor performance.

The AEB shall be turned off in the following situations (including but not limited to):

- When the vehicle is towed;
- When the vehicle is pulled into the automatic car wash;
- Temporary mountings or other objects cover the camera;
- When the vehicle is running off-road or on a race track;
- The vehicle is traveling on a winding road with continuous curves;
- The spare tire is used and anti-skid chains are installed;
- In bad weather, such as rain, heavy snow, hail, etc.

**Notice**

The AEB system will not function under the following conditions:

- The AEB fault warning light or AEB OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes on;
- The ESC system is working (driving on bumpy road or acceleration/deceleration on slippery road easily triggers the ESC to work);
- When ESC is faulty;
- The vehicle is reversing;
- The accelerator pedal is depressed to more than 80% of the travel;
- It is accelerating sharply, turning sharply, or correcting the steering wheel quickly;
- A vehicles is approaching in the same lane;
- When the driver seat belt is not fastened;
- When any door or the tailgate is opened;
- Speed sensor, accelerator pedal sensor, or brake pedal sensor malfunctions;
- When a system fault is detected.
- The camera monitoring function will be limited when adverse weather conditions are encountered (e.g. heavy rain, snow, hail, etc.).
- When the camera is dirty or covered (e.g. by other coverings on the front windshield), camera detection is interfered with and performance is reduced.
- AEB performance will be limited when the temperature inside the camera is too high.

**Notice**

- When the lighting conditions around the vehicle are poor (insufficient or excessive light), the camera detection performance will be affected adversely.
- When the vehicle is involved in a collision, violent vibration, etc. that may change the camera position, both the camera detection function and the AEB performance will be limited.
- AEB performance will be limited when the camera inside the front windshield is fogged up.
- When additional components or loads of other vehicles extend to the side, back, or upper part beyond the edge of the vehicle, the AEB may not work.
- When it is running in a curve, the AEB system may mistakenly recognize vehicles in other lanes ahead or fail to recognize vehicles in the lane, which may result in unanticipated braking or untimely braking of the vehicle, and therefore the driver should maintain a safe driving distance and be ready to take action or apply the brake.
- The AEB system may apply the brake when the vehicle passes over a low bridge or a height limit bar.
- The AEB system may apply the brake when the vehicle passes over speed bumps, railroad tracks, or when the vehicle approaches railroad tracks or roadside objects (e.g. barriers, transformers, traffic signs).

## Lane keeping assist (LKA)*

The lane keeping assist system includes lane departure warning (LDW) and lane keeping assist (LKA).

The system uses a camera located at the upper edge of the front windshield to detect road information such as lane lines/road edges/ shoulders and calculates the vehicle's position in the lane. When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the lane, the LDW reminds the driver to correct the trajectory through sound and image. When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the lane, LKA assists the driver to correct the driving trajectory by applying a torque to the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in the lane.

**Notice**

- LKA is only a driver assistance tool and cannot replace human prudent driving and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- When it is affected by the environment (such as heavy rain, fog, snow, backlighting and other conditions that affect the performance of the camera) or due to the characteristics of the target itself, the forward looking camera monitoring will be disturbed with performance degraded.
- Do not change the position of the forward looking camera without authorization, as strong vibration or slight impact will have an impact on the performance of the forward looking camera. The upper edge of the front windshield should be cleaned regularly to keep the camera clear.
- The field of view of the camera should not be obstructed during the use of the vehicle. Dirt on the front windshield within the field of view can cause the corresponding function to be unavailable.
- Do not tint the front windshield of the vehicle or add coatings that do not meet the specifications, as any extraneous items that affect the view of the system camera may interfere with the proper functioning of the system.

## Lane departure warning (LDW)*

Function description



When the LDW function is turned on, if the vehicle unintentionally deviates from the driving lane, LDW will alert the driver by an alarm, with the lane line on the deviating side highlighted in blue and accompanied by an audible alarm, provided the functional conditions are met.

### Function activation conditions

LDW is available only when the following conditions are met:

- There is detectable road information such as lane lines/curb/shoulder on both sides or one side of the current driving lane;
- When the vehicle peed is between 60~150km/h;
- It is being driven on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signal light on the deviating side and emergency flashers are not on;
- The vehicle is engaged in D gear;
- The vehicle is traveling smoothly and the driver is not turning the steering wheel drastically, fast or hard.

### LDW function indicator

— When the LDW indicator lights up in green, it indicates that the function is activated.

— When the LDW fault warning light is illuminated, it indicates that the function is faulty. If the warning light remains on after you restart the vehicle and drive it for a certain period of time and the system self-learning has been done, contact a franchise store for service as soon as possible.

### Function setting

When the LDW function is turned on, you can tap the "LDW" in the "Vehicle Center" - "Assisted Driving" - "Lane Warning Assist" - "LKA" bar on the CSD to turn on/off the LDW function.

**Caution**

When "LDW" is set, only LDW is turned on.

**Notice**

- The LDW system is only an auxiliary system and does not actively control your vehicle to change or maintain lanes, and it is your responsibility to always check the road conditions and actively control your vehicle.
- Avoid strong shocks to the system camera, and avoid its exposure to moisture and heat, and never disassemble the parts without approval.
- For the system to work properly, make sure that the top surface of the outside of the windshield is free of dirt, ice, snow or other obstructions.
- Do not tint the front windshield of the vehicle or add coatings that do not meet the specifications, as any extraneous items that affect the view of the system camera may interfere with the proper functioning of the system.
- If the system camera is affected by external environment and cannot detect the lane information or the function activation conditions are not satisfied, the system will not take any action if the vehicle deviates from the lane.
- The sound of the in-vehicle audio system or external noise may prevent you from hearing warning beeps. Try to avoid these sounds and focus on observing the road conditions.
- When the vehicle passes through a complicated lane section (intersection/sudden lane line change/lane line convergence, etc.), it may not be able to detect the lane information for a short period of time. So please make sure to maintain control of the vehicle.

## Lane keeping assist (LKA)*

### Function description



When the LKA function is turned on, if the vehicle unintentionally deviates from the driving lane, LKA assists the driver in keeping the vehicle between normal driving lanes by applying a reverse torque to the steering wheel, provided the functional conditions are met. At the same time, the lane line on the deviating side will be highlighted in blue on the instrument cluster, reminding the driver to control the vehicle in a timely manner.

### Function activation conditions

LKA is only available when the following conditions are met:

- There are detectable lane markings on both sides or one side of the current driving lane when the vehicle is in the middle of the road;
- When the vehicle peed is between 60~150km/h;
- It is being driven on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The lane width is 2.5~4.4m;
- The turn signal light on the deviating side and emergency flashers are not on;
- The vehicle is engaged in D gear;
- The vehicle is traveling smoothly and the driver is not turning the steering wheel drastically, fast or hard.

**Caution**

When it is changing lanes without enabling the turn signal light, LKA may be activated and the system will apply steering torque to the steering wheel.

### LKA function indicator

— When the LKA indicator lights up in green, it indicates that the function is activated.

— When the LKA fault warning light is illuminated, it indicates that the function is faulty. If the warning light remains on after you restart the vehicle and drive it for a certain period of time and the system self-learning has been done, contact a franchise store for service as soon as possible.

### Function setting

When the LKA function is turned on, you can tap the "LKA" in the "Vehicle Center" - "Assisted Driving" - "Lane Warning Assist" - "LKA" bar on the CSD to turn on/off the LKA function.

**Caution**

When LKA is set to be on, both the LDW and LKA are turned on.

### Functional status description

When the activation conditions are met, LKA is turned on, and the vehicle is traveling normally between the two lane lines, the detected lane lines will be highlighted in white, and the LKA status indicator (green) on the instrument cluster will be illuminated at this time:



When the system detects the following conditions, the system will issue an alarm (including alarm interface and alarm sound) and apply a torque to steering wheel to assist the driver to correct the driving track:

- When the system is able to detect the dual side lane lines, the vehicle is traveling at the boundary of the lane lines, there is a danger of deviating from the lane and the turn signal light is not on, the deviating side lane line is highlighted in blue:



- When the system changes from detecting dual lane lines to recognizing only a single lane line, the vehicle is traveling at the boundary of the lane lines, there is a danger of deviating from the lane and the turn signal light is not on, the deviating side lane line will be highlighted in blue:



- When the driver fails to apply a certain amount of torque to the steering wheel for a certain period of time and activates the LKA several times, the instrument cluster prompts "Please keep your hands on the steering wheel" and an audible alarm is activated for safety reasons.

### Function limiting factors

Even if LKA is turned on and working, the system may be affected or not work in the following situations:

- Poor visibility, such as rain, fog or snow;
- The front of the camera is blocked;
- High temperatures around the camera due to direct sunlight;
- Glare due to direct sunlight, oncoming traffic, reflected light from water on the road, etc;
- Sudden changes in outdoor brightness, e.g. entering/exiting a tunnel;
- Failure to turn on the headlights at night or when there is low light in a tunnel;
- Lack of lane markings or difficulty in distinguishing lane marking colors from roadway colors;
- Lane markings that are not clear and standardized;
- Too wide or too narrow lanes or too sharp curves;
- Increase or decrease in the number of lanes or complex lane markings through the roadway;
- More than two lane markings on the left and right sides of the vehicle;
- Markings or objects on the roadway that resemble lane markings;
- A barrier or other object casts ashadow on the lane markings;
- A short change in lane markings, such as at a ramp or freeway exit;
- Other conditions that may interfere with the camera's ability to correctly recognize lane line information or with the system's ability to control steering.

## Indirect tire pressure monitoring system




The direct TPMS employs tire pressure sensors installed on the wheel rim to measure the tire pressure and temperature, and sends the tire pressure and temperature information from inside the tire to the receiving device through a wireless transmitter. After decoding and analysis, the information is sent to the instrument cluster through the bus to display the current tire pressure and temperature values.

When one or more of the four wheels experience tire leakage, high/low tire pressure, high tire temperature, or tire pressure sensor fault, the pressure/temperature information of the corresponding wheel on the instrument cluster will turn red to indicate that the tire pressure/temperature is abnormal, and the tire pressure fault warning light on the instrument cluster will go on.

When the tire pressure is initialized successfully, the tire pressure fault warning light on the instrument cluster will go out.

If the tire pressure fault warning light on the instrument cluster remains on after the initialization operation, go to a service center for inspection and repair.

**Notice**

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a tire pressure gauge and cannot prevent tire deflation or burst. It is mainly used to give an alarm after monitoring a tire pressure lower than a set value. This system cannot replace the driver's responsibility, so careful inspection is still necessary.

When one or more of the following situations occur in the TPMS:

- The air pressure of the front or rear wheel is too high or too low.
- The pressure of a certain tire drops by more than 0.16 bar within 30 seconds.
- The temperature of a certain tire is greater than 85 °C.
- The battery level of a certain tire pressure sensor is lower than the set value.
- When the vehicle speed is ≥ 30km/h, the controller does not receive a tire pressure signal from a certain tire for 10 minutes.

In this case, the tire pressure warning light on the instrument cluster will light up, and the instrument cluster screen will show "high pressure of the XX wheel, leakage of the XX wheel, low pressure of the XX wheel, high temperature of the XX wheel, low battery level of the XX tire pressure sensor, and fault of the XX tire pressure sensor", and the buzzer will sound.

When the vehicle is stationary, performing the above operations may cause the tire pressure warning indicator to fail to automatically go out and the tire pressure information display value to update. Please drive the vehicle at a speed higher than 30km/h for about 2-5 minutes to activate the tire pressure monitoring system, turn off the indicator, and update the tire pressure information.

If tire rotation is performed, please perform tire pressure learning in an authorized dealer to avoid incorrect positioning signal of the tire pressure.

**Notice**

- Before initializing the tire pressure monitoring system, make sure that the pressure of each wheel is adjusted to the specified value.
- Please learn the tire pressure when the vehicle is stationary.

**⚠ Warning**

Under no circumstances can the parking assist replace or exempt the driver's responsibility.

## PDC

This vehicle is equipped with a parking distance control (PDC). For reversing and parking in a narrow space, the radar sensors installed on the rear bumper are used to detect whether there is an obstacle around the vehicle and the distance from the obstacle with sound and image prompts. Therefore, the driver can be assisted to reverse and park safely and easily to avoid collision.

**Notice**

- The reversing radar system cannot replace the driver's responsibility. The driver shall be highly alert during reversing, as the reversing radar system may not detect:

– Objects under the bumper or vehicle, or objects that are too close to or too far away from the vehicle.

– Children, pedestrians, bicyclists or pets.

– Very tiny objects.

**Notice**

- If the driver does not notice conditions behind the vehicle before or during reversing, it may cause an accident. Even if the vehicle is equipped with a reversing radar system, the driver must observe carefully before reversing. During reversing, the driver must observe for obstacles and the vehicle's rearview mirror.

### PDC alarm*

When the sensor detects an obstacle in the detection area, the CSD will display different colored auxiliary lines at the rear of the vehicle, and the buzzer will also sound at different frequencies according to the distance from the obstacle.

The reversing radar alarm has four frequencies:

| Distance to obstacle | Sounding mode of buzzer | Trajectory line color |
|---|---|---|
| 90~150cm | Interrupted sound (1Hz) | Green |
| 60~90cm | Intermittent sound (2Hz) | Yellow |
| 35~60cm | Rapid intermittent sound (4Hz) | Yellow |
| Within 35cm | Long sound | Red |

### PDC activation conditions

When the vehicle power supply is in "ON" mode and the vehicle speed is below 12 km/h, switch the gear to the "R" position, and the PDC will be turned on; Move the gear out of the "R" position, and the PDC will be turned off.

### Cases where the PDC cannot work properly

The PDC may not work properly in the following cases:

1. The sensor is frozen or damp (the sensor can work normally after being unfrozen or dehumidified);
2. The sensor is covered by foreign objects such as heavy rain, snow or water (the sensor can work normally after the foreign objects are removed);
3. The vehicle is running on winding roads (unpaved roads, gravel roads, bumpy roads or steep slopes);
4. There is interference (vehicle horn, vehicle engine that makes loud sounds, truck air brake, air gun sound, etc.) from ultrasonic sources around the vehicle;
5. There is a radio transmitter within the sensor detection range;
6. Obstacles are very close to the sensor.

## Obstacles that may not be detected by radar

The radar may not be able to detect the following obstacles:



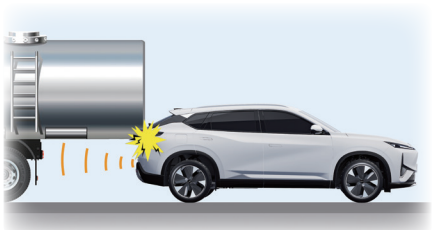
1. Thin sheets or slender objects such as steel cables, chains, thin posts and piles;



2. Objects that can absorb sensor frequencies, such as snow, clothing or sponge materials;



3. Obstacles below the detection range, such as small animals, short steps or low objects;



4. Obstacles above the detection range, such as hanging objects, rolling gates with lower part half-open, or truck tail.

## Reverse camera *

When the gear is shifted to "R" position, the CSD will automatically display the image behind the vehicle.

The system helps the driver to observe the image behind the vehicle on the display screen to avoid damaging the vehicle, but it also has blind spots, such as small objects under the bumper, as well as objects approaching the rear of the bumper and the corners on both sides.

### Reverse camera

The rear view camera is located in the middle of rear bumper and in the center of the two license plate lights.

### Cases where the camera cannot work properly

1. The vehicle is running in a stormy or foggy day;
2. The camera surface is covered with frozen water, mud, dust or snow;
3. The vehicle is reversing with reversing light OFF at dark.

**Notice**

- Due to the vision disparity of each person, the movement of the vehicle and different shapes of obstacles, the distance seen visually on the screen may be different from the actual distance.
- Make sure that the camera is kept clean and not covered with mud, frost or snow.
- During reversing, make sure the tailgate is closed.
- Since the reverse camera is located above the license plate, avoid impacting the camera when installing and removing the license plate.
- The reverse camera system brings convenience to the driver, but it cannot replace the proper method of reversing. Before reversing, check the rear side for safety and reverse the vehicle slowly.

### Function description of auxiliary line

The display shows two dynamic reversing auxiliary lines (in blue), which are guide tracks for passing, and the width between two static reversing auxiliary lines (in green, yellow and red), which is a guide for passing. The reversing auxiliary line is shown in three colors to indicate the reverse distance:

- Red line zone: about 0~0.35m from the rear bumper of the vehicle. It is the warning zone where the vehicle shall be stopped immediately.
- Yellow line zone: about 0.35~0.9m from the rear bumper of the vehicle. It is the buffer zone where the vehicle shall be slowed down.
- Green line zone: It is the safe zone about 0.9~3m from the rear bumper of the vehicle.

**Notice**

- The width between two reversing auxiliary lines is larger than the actual vehicle width.
- The rear view static auxiliary lines will slightly deflect rightwards because the reverse camera is not installed in the middle.
- The positions of the auxiliary lines displayed on the screen will vary with the vehicle load (number of passengers, luggage weight, etc.). Be sure to visually check the vehicle surroundings before the operation.
- Due to the vision disparity of each person, the movement of the vehicle and different shapes of obstacles, the distance seen visually on the screen may be different from the actual distance.
- During reversing from flat ground toward uphill, the actual distance to the obstacle is shorter than that seen on the screen. Be careful not to hit objects in the reversing track during reversing.
- Due to the limited monitoring range, the areas underneath the bumper, near the rear of the bumper and at both bumper corners cannot be displayed on the screen.

### Precautions for operation of reverse camera

When turned on, the system takes some time to initialize. During the initialization, the image on the display screen may be distorted.

When the temperature is too high, too low or the light is very strong or dark, the display screen may not show the object clearly, which is not a fault.

A shadow of an object may be seen on the display screen. This is due to the reflection of This is not a fault, but is caused by the sunlight reflection of bumper.

Pictures on the screen may flash under fluorescence, which shall not be considered as a fault.

The color of object shown on the screen may be different from the actual color.

If the rear view camera is covered with dirt, rain or snow, an object shown on the screen may be not clear and it is required to clean the rear view camera.

## 360° AVM *

The 360° AVM employs 4 external cameras to capture the surrounding environment of the vehicle and display it on the CSD, providing the driver with information on the surrounding environment of the vehicle in real time, and assisting the driver in observing the surrounding environment of the vehicle from all angles.

By switching between the front/rear and left/right viewpoints and the indication of auxiliary lines, the relative orientation and distance between the vehicle and the obstacle can be observed, and therefore the driver can be guided to pass the complicated road surface or park the vehicle in the parking space safely.

**Notice**

Due to the vision disparity of each person, the movement of the vehicle and different shapes of obstacles, the distance seen visually on the CSD may be different from the actual distance.

**Warning**

The driver shall always take ultimate responsibility for ensuring safe driving of vehicles and comply with applicable road traffic safety laws and regulations. The surround view system cannot replace the driver to perform the safety confirmation of the surrounding environment of the vehicle and can only assist the driver to observe the surrounding environment of the vehicle. The driver shall always pay attention to the road environment to avoid danger.

## Surround view camera

### Layout of surround view cameras

The body is provided with a wide-angle camera respectively in the front, rear, left and right for the 360° AVM.

- The front view camera is placed on the front bumper.
- The side view cameras are placed on the left and right exterior rearview mirrors.
- The rearview camera is located in the center of the rear bumper.

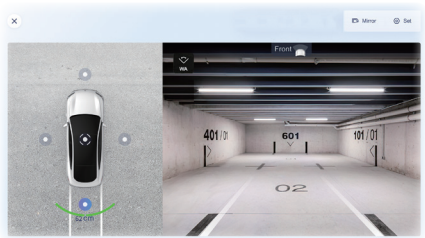
### Cases where the camera cannot work properly

1. The vehicle is running in a stormy or foggy day;
2. The camera surface is covered with frozen water, mud, dust or snow;
3. The vehicle is reversing with reversing light OFF at dark.

**Notice**

- Make sure that the camera is kept clean and not covered with moisture, water droplet, mud, frost or snow.
- During reversing, make sure the tailgate is closed.
- Since the reverse camera is located above the license plate, avoid impacting the camera when installing and removing the license plate.
- The surround view system cannot replace the proper method of reversing. Before reversing, check the rear side for safety and reverse the vehicle slowly.

## Activating/deactivating 360° AVM



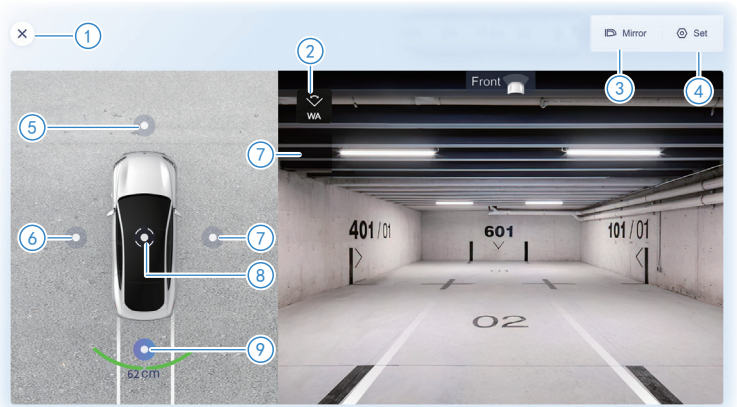

### Activating 360° AVM

- When the vehicle is reversing at a speed lower than 30km/h, the AVM is turned on;
- When the "Turning Triggered Surround View" is set to the on state in the 540° AVM - "Settings" interface, turn on the turn signal light and the surround view system is turned on when the vehicle speed is less than 30km/h;

### Deactivating 360° AVM

- When the gear is in a non-R position, tap the "X" icon in the upper left corner of the surround view system screen, and the surround view system will be turned off;
- Enable the surround view system by turning on the left or right steering switch, or disable it by turning off the steering switch;
- Turn on the surround view system by engaging in R gear, or turn it off by disengaging from R gear and then engaging in P gear.
- Turn on the AVM by R gear and left/right steering switch. After the vehicle speed exceeds 30km/h, the AVM is automatically turned off (after the vehicle speed is reduced to below 27km/h, the AVM display will be restored).

## Use of surround view system




In the surround view system screen, the following operations can be performed:

Tap ① to exit the surround view system screen;

Tap ② to switch the camera view;

Tap ③ to enter the rear-view mirror adjustment interface;

Tap ④ to enter the surround view system setting interface;

Tap ⑤ to switch to the front view screen;

Tap ⑥ to switch to the left view screen;

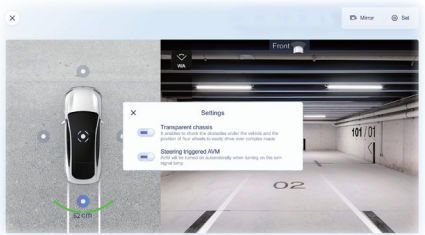
Tap ⑦ to switch to the right view screen;

Tap ⑧ to switch to narrow channel screen (front wheel/rear wheel/four-wheel);

Tap ⑨ to switch to the rear view screen.

## Surround view system settings

Enter the surround view system interface, tap the "Settings" icon, and the surround view function setting interface will pop up:




- In the surround view function setting interface, the transparent chassis, side radar alarm sound, and steering triggered surround view function can be turned on/off.

**Notice**

- When the surround view system is turned on, the CSD will display the surround view system screen and corresponding auxiliary lines.
- The positions of the auxiliary lines displayed on the screen will vary with the vehicle load (number of passengers, luggage weight, etc.). When driving the vehicle, be sure to check the surroundings of the vehicle.
- Due to the vision disparity of each person, the movement of the vehicle and different shapes of obstacles, the distance seen visually on the screen may be different from the actual distance.
- During reversing from flat ground toward uphill, the actual distance to the obstacle is shorter than that seen on the screen. Be careful not to hit objects in the reversing track during reversing.
- Due to the blind spots in the camera's field of view, images of the front bumper, the area near the rear bumper, and the areas near the four corners of the vehicle cannot be displayed in the surround view image.

## Operation instructions for surround view system

When the vehicle power supply is switched to "ON" mode, the system is turned on and initialized. During system initialization, the displayed image may be unstable.

When the temperature is too high/low or the light is too bright/dark, the CSD may not be able to show the object clearly, which shall not be considered as a fault.

Shadow of an object may be shown on the CSD. This is due to the reflection of This is not a fault, but is caused by the sunlight reflection of bumper.

Pictures on the CSD may flash under fluorescence, which shall not be considered as a fault.

The color of object shown on the CSD may be different from the actual color.

If rain, dirt, snow or other foreign matter adheres to the camera, the image on the CSD may not be clear. In this case, please clean the camera promptly.

## General description

The anti-theft system will not allow the engine to start when unregistered keys are used.

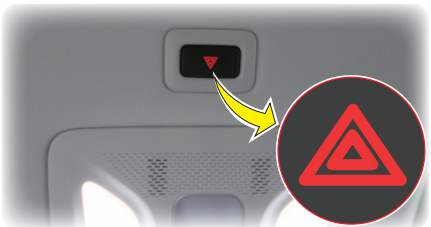
However, the engine may also fail to start with a registered key when:

- The other key is in use.
- A highway automatic charging equipment (e.g. ETC) is in use.
- Other devices that can transmit similar signals are in use.

Start the vehicle in accordance with the following steps:

- Clear conditions that may influence the keys.
- Switch the vehicle power supply to "ON" mode for approximately 5 seconds.
- Switch the vehicle power supply to "OFF" mode for approximately 10 seconds.
- Start the vehicle.
- Repeat the above steps until all the possible interference factors are eliminated.

If the vehicle can be started successfully through the above steps, it is recommended to place the registered keys far away from other devices to prevent interference.



When the vehicle power supply is in "OFF" mode, the indicator above the hazard warning light switch flashes. This indicates that the anti-theft system equipped on the vehicle is working properly.

**Notice**

- Do not change the transmitting frequency for smart key, or increase the transmitting power (including installing a RF power amplifier), or connect an exterior antenna or use other transmitting antennas without permission.
- The use of smart key shall not cause harmful interference to all the legal radio communication services. In case of interference, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference prior to continuous use.

## Body anti-theft function

### Function activation

With the vehicle powered OFF, if the end of the interior central door lock switch is pressed and held for more than 5s, the body anti-theft function will be enabled and the hazard warning light will flash once.

### Function deactivation

When the body anti-theft function is enabled, if the end of the interior central door lock switch is pressed and held for more than 5 s, the function will be disabled and the hazard warning light will flash twice.

### Trigger/disabling alarm

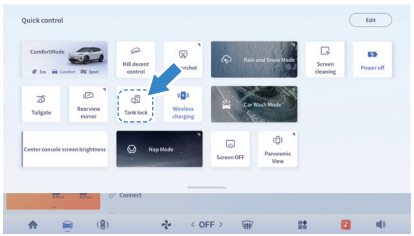
After the doors are locked remotely, the anti-theft alarm will be activated when the doors are opened by the inside handle or the mechanical key, the horn will sound and the hazard warning light will flash (the warning method can be set in the CSD) for about 30s.

Press the unlock button on the key to disable the alarm.

### Settings of alarm reminder method

In the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" - "Anti-theft Mode" bar of the CSD, the "Sound+Light" or "Light" alarm mode can be set.

## Refueling




### Opening/closing fuel filler cover

The fuel filler flap is located on the left of the vehicle.

Tap the "Filler Cap" or "Fuel Tank Cover" icon in the drop-down menu of the CSD, then press the rear end of the filler cap to pop open the filler cap.

Press the fuel filler cover until it is completely closed and locked.

### Opening/closing fuel filler cap

1. As there may be pressure in the fuel tank, turn the filler cap counterclockwise slightly and stop turning when a "hissing" exhaust sound is heard to prevent fuel from spraying out;
2. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise, remove the filler cap and fasten it to the hook on the filler cap.

Tighten the filler cap clockwise until you hear a "click" sound, which indicates that the filler cap has been reliably locked.

**⚠ Warning**

- Before refueling, set vehicle power supply to “OFF”to shut down the engine.
- During refueling, pay attention to prohibiting smoking, open flames, kindling and do not use mobile phones.
- During self-service refueling, strictly abide by the applicable safety regulations. The fuel filling gun shall be fully inserted into the fuel filler before being turned on, so as not to cause fuel spill.
- When the fuel filling gun stops automatically for the first time after normal filling, do not continue to add fuel; otherwise, the fuel may overflow, causing a danger of fire.
- It is strictly forbidden to fill up with methanol gasoline, which may cause engine damage.

### Precautions for self-service refueling

**Notice**

- Stop the vehicle with the left side close to the self-service refueling machine marked with the fuel grade suitable for the vehicle, and shut down the engine.
- Smoking and using mobile phones are strictly prohibited at fuel stations.
- Before refueling, be sure to touch the hand-shaped mark at the lower part of the refueling machine for electrostatic discharge.
- The fuel filling gun shall be extended into the filling port as far as possible to reduce the fuel mist volatilized during refueling.
- Do not enter the vehicle during refueling to prevent recurrence of static electricity.
- After refueling, please wait for a moment until there is no remaining fuel before removing the fuel filling gun to prevent fuel spill.
- Put back the fuel filling gun and retrieve the fuel card.
- Close the fuel filler cap and the fuel filler cover properly.

# 3. Emergency


**Hazard warning lights and reflective vests .....164**
- Hazard warning light.....164
- Reflective vest.....164

**Warning triangle .....165**
- Using warning triangle.....165

**Driver's tool.....166**
- Driver's tool .....166

**Emergency tire repair.....167**
- Precautions for emergency tire repair ..167
- Preparations: .....167
- Emergency tire repair .....168

**Replacing fuse .....169**
- EJB* .....169
- IPJB.....171
- Inspection and replacement of fuse .....173

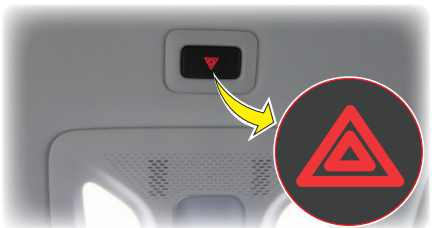
**Replacemene of bulb .....174**

**Jump start .....175**
- Description of jump start.....175
- Jump start.....176

**Towing and traction.....178**
- Precautions .....178
- Method of towing .....178
- Illustration of towing vehicle in wrong way . 179
- Towing eye position .....179
- Towing trapped vehicle.....180

**SOS*.....181**

## Hazard warning light



Hazard warning light switch is located behind the ceiling light switch panel. In case of an emergency, turn on the hazard warning light to alert other occupants of this situation so as to avoid any traffic accident.

When the hazard warning light button is pressed, all turn signal lights will flash simultaneously, so do the left turn indicator and the right turn indicator on the instrument cluster. To turn off the hazard warning light, press the hazard warning light button again.

The hazard warning light may work provided the battery is not depleted even if the vehicle power supply is set to "OFF" mode.

The hazard warning light shall be turned on in the following conditions:

1. The vehicle breaks down due to any technical problem;
2. The vehicle is at the tail end of a traffic jam;
3. Emergencies;
4. The vehicle tows another vehicle or it is towed.

**Notice**

- If not necessary, do not turn on the hazard warning light for a long time while the vehicle is not started for the avoidance of lack of electricity.

### Automatic activation in case of emergency braking

When the ABS is active and the vehicle speed is greater than 60km/h, slam on the brake pedal to apply emergency braking so that the vehicle decelerates to a certain speed. In this case, the hazard warning light may turn on automatically and both turn signal lights flash simultaneously. When the vehicle continues running with the brake pedal released, the hazard warning light will go out.

**Tip: In the event of a vehicle collision, the hazard warning light may turn on automatically.**

## Reflective vest

One reflective vest is supplied with the vehicle, which is folded and packed in a packaging bag. Keep the reflective vest in the glove compartment for easy access.

When dealing with vehicle breakdowns at night or in low visibility conditions, the driver can take out the reflective vest from the glove box and put it on to improve the driver's visibility when he/she is outside the vehicle.

## Using warning triangle

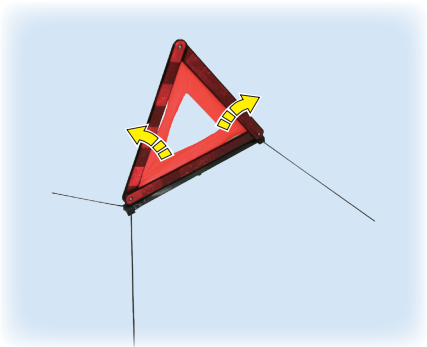
### Storage location of warning triangle



The warning triangle is placed on the floor of the trunk or under the trunk carpet.

In accordance with relevant laws, in case that the vehicle cannot be driven off the traffic lane or stops on the road shoulder due to a fault or accident, its hazard warning light must be turned on or the warning triangle must be set behind it to remind the drivers behind.

### Unfolding method of warning triangle



1. Unfold the four supports at the bottom;
2. Pull the two edgefolds and of the reflector to buckle up the lock stop on the top.
3. When being used, the supports shall contact the ground with the side made of reflecting material placed backward.

After use, fold the warning triangle in reverse order and put it away.

During folding, apply force to the upper areas of the left and right reflectors. To separate the two reflectors without damage, apply force slightly towards the reflective side.

### Distance from warning triangle to vehicle




| | Ordinary highway | Expressway |
|---|---|---|
| Distance, L | 50~100m | ≥150m |

**Notice**

- Place the warning triangle with the reflective side facing backward.
- In case a rainy or foggy day where the visibility is low, place the warning triangle 200 meters away from the rear of vehicle.

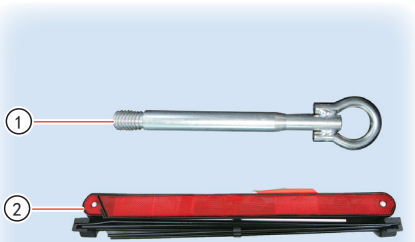
## Driver’s tool

### Storage location



The driver's tools are stored under the trunk floor and they can be seen by lifting off the trunk floor.

### Driver’s tool




① Towing eye- For vehicle towing.

② Warning triangle - for warning alerts.

### Emergency tire repair tool




The emergency tire repair tool is used to seal punctured tires. It consists of a canister of sealing fluid and is used for temporary emergency repair. It must be replaced if it expires.

Emergency tire maintenance shall be followed by a timely tire repair.

**Notice**

- The emergency tire repair tool is only suitable for sealed tires with punctures in the tread.

## Precautions for emergency tire repair

If a tire puncture is found, read the following safety instructions and perform the emergency tire repair correctly for safety.

Wear gloves and take appropriate protecting measures for operation to prevent injury.

**Notice**

- The emergency tire repair tool is only suitable for sealed tires with punctures in the tread.
- Make sure the vehicle is parked reliably and the shift lever is in "P" position.
- Tire valve damage or sidewall damage is not covered by this product repair.
- If there is heavy traffic on the road and it is in close proximity to the faulty vehicle, contact the professional roadside assistance personnel instead of performing emergency tire repair.
- The diameter of the puncture must be less than or equal to 6mm.
- Do not drive faster than 80km/h after filling the tire repair fluid.
- If the tire repair liquid splashes on the tire or rim, rinse with water or wipe with a rag; if it is accidentally splashed into the eyes, please flush with water immediately.
- The storage temperature is from -40C to 85°C, and contact with open flame is prohibited.

## Preparations:

### Preparing to stop

If a tire is found to be punctured or punctured by foreign objects, and the diameter of the puncture is less than or equal to 6mm, the vehicle should be slowly driven to a safe place for emergency tire repair. The following points should be noted:

1. Turn on the hazard warning light.
2. Drive the vehicle slowly, and keep it away from the highway and traffic.
3. Apply the EPB.
4. Shift the transmission to "P".
5. Turn off the vehicle power supply.
6. Place a warning triangle at a suitable position which is at the specified distance from the rear of the vehicle.

### Preparation for tools



Take out the tire repair tools and the warning triangle from the trunk.

## Emergency tire repair




1. Shake the tire repair fluid well before use, and then remove the red valve safety cover above the tire repair tool;



2. Align the tire repair tool connecting valve with the tire valve and tighten it. Turn the red valve clockwise and invert the bottle to start inflating the tire repair;



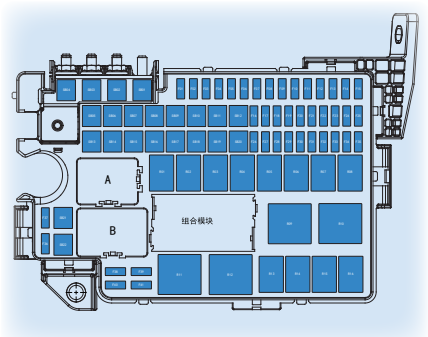
3. After filling the tire repair fluid, close the red valve counterclockwise, unscrew the connecting valve, and remove the tire repair tool.
4. After driving the vehicle for a period of time immediately, the repair can be completed, and the best effect can be achieved after driving for more than 10km.

**⚠ Warning**

Emergency tire repair is only for emergency use in emergency situations. After the emergency tire repair, the driving speed should not be higher than 80km/h, and you should go to the nearest authorized dealer for repair as soon as possible.

## EJB*

### EJB




The EJB is beside the battery. After opening the box cover, you can see the fuse.

There are relevant fuse instructions on the fuse box cover.

### Fuse instructions

| No. | Capacity | Fuse function | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| F1 | 10A | Fan relay, oil pump relay, carbon canister solenoid valve, electric compressor; Thermal management valves, oil tank isolation valves | MINI |
| F2 | 30A | EMS main relay power supply | MINI |
| F3 | 20A | Engine sensors | MINI |
| F4 | 20A | Ignition coil power supply | MINI |
| F5 | 5A | IGN2 feedback input | MINI |
| F6 | 15A | Check the power supply of the heater water pump. | MINI |
| F7 | 5A | EPS, ESC IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F8 | 5A | MTCU, AVAS, ADAS radar | MINI |
| F9 | 5A | Engine control unit, brake light switch | MINI |
| F10 | 5A | BMS IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F11 | 15A | Battery electric water pump power | MINI |
| F12 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F13 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F14 | 15A | Intercooler water pump power supply | MINI |
| F15 | 15A | Motor coolant pump power supply | MINI |
| F16 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F17 | 10A | AGS B+ power supply | MINI |
| F18 | 5A | Brake light switch B+ | MINI |
| F19 | 20A | Light relay 2 | MINI |
| F20 | 30A | Front passenger seat adjustment power | MINI |
| F21 | 10A | Engine control unit | MINI |
| F22 | 20A | Fuel pump power supply B+ | MINI |
| F23 | 30A | Front passenger seat control unit B+ power supply | MINI |
| F24 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F25 | 30A | Power seat B+ | MINI |
| F26 | 10A | BMS B+ | MINI |
| F27 | 10A | BMS B+ | MINI |
| F28 | 10A | Horn relay | MINI |
| F29 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F30 | 15A | VIU exterior light power supply 2 | MINI |
| F31 | 5A | Main relay coil power supply, TMM relay coil power supply | MINI |

## Replacing fuse

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| F32 | 30A | Front wiper relay | **MINI** |
| F33 | 20A | VIU door handle power supply | **MINI** |
| F34 | 20A | VIU exterior light power supply 1 | **MINI** |
| F35 | 20A | Light relay 1 | **MINI** |
| **No.** | **Capacity** | **Fuse function** | **Type** |
| F36 | 10A | Front penetration light, trim light premium power supply | **MINI** |
| F37 | 15A | Left rear combination light (movable side) (premium) | **MINI** |
| F38 | 10A | Left front high and low beam, dimming motor power supply | **MINI** |
| | 15A | | **MINI** |
| F39 | 10A | Right front high and low beam, dimming motor power supply | **MINI** |
| | 10A | Right rear combination light (fixed side) (premium) | **MINI** |
| F40 | 15A | Right front high and low beam, dimming motor power supply | **MINI** |
| F41 | 10A | Left rear combination light (fixed side) (premium) | **MINI** |
| SB01 | 60A | High-power oil pump | **MIDI** |
| SB02 | 80A | EPS B+ | **MIDI** |
| SB03 | 80A | Cooling fan B+ | **MIDI** |
| SB04 | 60A | Engine main water pump | **MIDI** |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SB05 | 60A | IBC B+ | **JCASE** |
| SB06 | 30A | Right window motor power supply | **JCASE** |
| SB07 | 40A | Thermal management relay (pump) power supply | **JCASE** |
| SB08 | 30A | POT power supply* | **JCASE** |
| SB09 | 40A | IGN2 blower power supply | **JCASE** |
| **No.** | **Capacity** | **Fuse function** | **Type** |
| SB10 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB11 | 30A | MTCU power supply B+ | **JCASE** |
| SB12 | 30A | Left window motor power supply | **JCASE** |
| SB13 | 60A | IBC B+ | **JCASE** |
| SB14 | 40A | R1 main relay power supply | **JCASE** |
| SB15 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB16 | 30A | MTCU power supply B+ | **JCASE** |
| SB17 | 30A | Rear defroster relay power output | **JCASE** |
| SB18 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB19 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB20 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB21 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |
| SB22 | Reserved | - | **JCASE** |

### Relay description

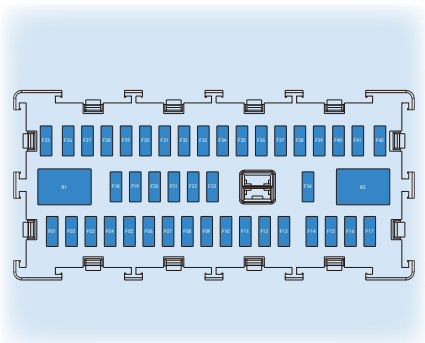
| No. | Capacity | Fuse function | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| R1 | Reserved | - | Micro |
| R2 | Reserved | - | Micro |
| R3 | Reserved | - | Micro |
| R4 | 35A | Light relay 1 | Micro |
| R5 | 35A | Light relay 2 | Micro |
| R6 | 35A | Fuel pump relay | Micro |
| R7 | 35A | Horn relay | Micro |
| R8 | Reserved | - | Micro |
| R9 | 70A | TMM relay | POWER **MINI** |
| R10 | 70A | IG2 relay | POWER **MINI** |
| R11 | 40A | Main relay | **MINI** |
| R12 | Reserved | - | **MINI** |
| R13 | 35A | Wiper main relay | Micro |
| R14 | Reserved | - | Micro |
| R15 | 35A | High-speed wiper relay | Micro |
| R16 | Reserved | - | Micro |

## IPJB



The IPJB can be seen by removing the cover plate on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

## Description of IPJB



| No. | Capacity | Fuse function | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| F1 | 5A | IVI, IC IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F2 | 10A | IG1 feedback; ETC*, sunroof ECU*, ADAS cameras*, reversing main radar, instrument panel ambient light*IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F3 | 5A | Column shifter switch IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F4 | 10A | Airbag IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F5 | 5A | Four-door power window switch backlight power supply | MINI |
| F6 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F7 | 10A | Seat ventilation*power supply | MINI |
| F8 | 15A | EJB IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F9 | 5A | DCDC IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F10 | 10A | Wireless charging*IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F11 | 5A | TU IG1 power supply | MINI |
| F12 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F13 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F14 | 15A | 12V power socket power supply | MINI |
| F15 | 15A | USB charger | MINI |
| F16 | 5A | ACC feedback | MINI |
| F17 | 10A | Power supply for MP5*, IVI*, front ceiling light USB, and rearview mirror adjustment switch | MINI |
| F18 | 5A | IC B+ power supply | MINI |
| F19 | 10A | OBD B+ power supply | MINI |
| F20 | 25A | A/V system domain controller*B+ | MINI |
| | 20A | MP5 B+ | MINI |

## Replacing fuse

| No. | Capacity | Fuse function | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| F21 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F22 | 5A | HUD*B+ power supply | MINI |
| F23 | Reserved | - | MINI |
| F24 | 10A | Interior ambient light B+ | MINI |
| F25 | 5A | HUD* controlled B+ power supply | MINI |
| F26 | 30A | Serial terminal main fuse | MINI |
| F27 | 20A | A/C power supply | MINI |
| F28 | 10A | Left tailgate Bluetooth antenna, left front handle switch, left front door window switch, A/C power supply | MINI |
| F29 | 20A | Left and right side interior light power supply | MINI |
| F30 | 15A | Controlled power relay 2 B+ | MINI |
| F31 | 5A | Battery power sensor B+ | MINI |
| F32 | 20A | Exterior light power supply 3/4 | MINI |
| F33 | 10A | Rear defroster relay coil, column shifter switch B+ | MINI |
| F34 | 5A | RLS* B+, ADAS camera* | MINI |
| F35 | 20A | AMP* B+ | MINI |
| F36 | 30A | Sunroof motor B+; | MINI |
| F37 | 15A | Exterior light power supply 5 | MINI |
| F38 | Reserved | | MINI |
| F39 | 10A | DMTL, OBC B+ | MINI |
| F40 | Reserved | | MINI |
| F41 | 20A | Left/right door lock power supply | MINI |
| F42 | 5A | Rearview mirror heating | MINI |

### Relay description

| No. | Capacity | Fuse function | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| R1 | 35A | IG1 relay | Micro |
| R2 | 35A | ACC relay/IGN3 relay | Micro |
| R3 | 35A | Rear defroster relay | Micro |
| R4 | 35A | Controlled power relay 2 | Micro |

**Notice**

- Some fuses shall be replaced by an authorized dealer.
- Description of the fuses mentioned above is not absolutely suitable for all vehicle models. If you are required to know the purpose of the fuses, please check them on an actual vehicle. The fuses may slightly vary from vehicle to vehicle.
- Some electrical consumers may be equipped with multiple fuses, or multiple electrical consumers may share a single fuse.

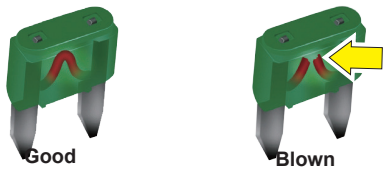
## Inspection and replacement of fuse

If an electrical consumer in the vehicle stops working, first check whether it is caused by a damaged fuse. It is possible to find out which fuse or fuses control the electrical consumer according to the description of fuse.

Before it is impossible to determine whether the damaged fuse is the cause of the fault, replace all the damaged fuses and check whether the electrical equipment can operate normally. If the fault still exists, please contact an authorized dealer for inspection and maintenance.

**Notice**

- Please never use the fuse with rating higher or lower than the value specified on the fuse box. Otherwise, the electrical system may be damaged or a fire may occur.
- If a blown fuse was replaced with a backup lower-rating fuse, replace it with the fuse of the proper rating as soon as possible when the fault has been removed.




Remove the fuse corresponding to the faulty electrical equipment, and check whether the fuse is blown. If it has been blown (the fuse as arrowed has broken), replace it with a replacement fuse of the same or lower rating.

If the replacement fuse of the same rating has been blown within a short time, a serious electrical fault may occur to the vehicle. In this case, it is forbidden to use faulty electrical equipment, leave the blown fuse in the fuse box, and contact an authorized dealer for maintenance.

**Caution**

If the vehicle cannot be move because there is no available backup fuse, a fuse (such as the fuse of the cigarette lighter or the radio) of the same or lower rating from another circuit may be removed for use, provided that the electrical consumer is not in use and will not interfere with driving.

## Replacemene of bulb

Turn signal lights, brake lights and headlights are important to driving safety. Check whether the lights are in good condition every time before driving.

Usually, it is necessary to remove other related parts before replacing a bulb, and some bulbs can only be replaced via operation in the engine compartment, which is very complex and requires expertise and tools. In this case, it is recommended to visit an authorized dealer for bulb replacement.

**Notice**

- The bulb may be at high temperature when it just goes out, so wait for the bulb to cool down before replacing it.
- Do not touch the bulb directly with a hand. Instead, wrap it in a piece of lint-free cloth to avoid affecting the lighting.
- Do not touch the glass cover or inner of reflector with hand while replacing the bulb.
- Use the bulb with the same model and power as the original one.

## Bulb specification

| Name and model of light | | Quantity | Light color | Power | Model of light bulb |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Front combination light | High/low beam | One on each side | White | Low beam: 23W<br>High beam: 15.5W | LED/LED |
| | Turn signal light | One on each side | Amber | 21.5W | LED |
| | Position light* | One on each side | White | 3W | LED |
| | | One on the left, middle and right respectively | White | Position lights + penetration lights: 3W + 9W | LED |
| | Daytime running light | One on each side | White | 25W | LED |
| Rear combination light | Turn signal light | One on each side | Amber | Fixed side: 3.375W<br>Movable side: 8.7W | LED |
| | Brake light | One on each side | Red | Fixed side: 6.21W<br>Movable side: 31W | LED |
| | Reverse light | One on each side | White | 8.5W | LED |
| | Rear position light | 3 (left and right fixed side + movable side) | Red | Fixed side: 0.783W<br>Movable side: 5.68W | LED |
| Rear fog light | | 1 | Red | 21W | H21W |
| Rear high-mounted brake light | | 1 | Red | 1.08W | LED |
| License plate light | | 2 | White | 5W | W5W |
| Trunk light | | 1 | White | 5W | C5W |

## Description of jump start

If the engine cannot start due to over-discharge of the battery, it can be started by connecting the battery to that of another vehicle via the jumper cables. In addition, the following points shall be noted:

- Make sure the rated voltage of the battery is 12 V and its capacity (Ah) is not lower than that of the battery from the faulty vehicle.
- The clamps on the jumper cable must be insulated.

**Notice**

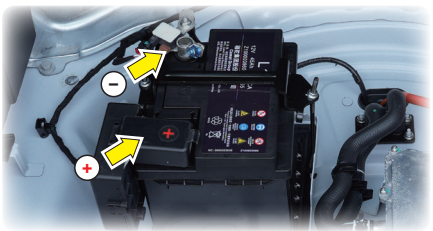
- The battery may be surrounded by explosive hydrogen. The battery must be kept far away from any fire spark and open fire.
- Before starting operation on the battery, be sure to carefully read and follow the warning instructions for safety related to battery operation. and it is recommended have a professional operate it.
- Make sure that the polarity of the connected jumper cables is correct and that the clamps are securely connected before jump start; avoid damage to the equipment, sparks , etc., caused by reversed polarity or loose clamp;

### Avoid accumulation of static electricity

Highly flammable gas mixture is generated during charging the battery or jump starting, thus make sure that neither you nor the battery accumulates static electricity. For example, static electricity may accumulate under the following conditions:

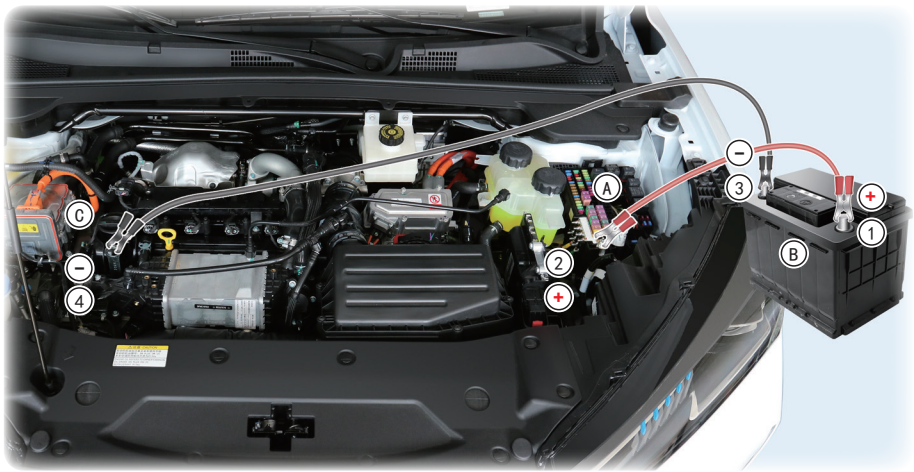
1. You are wearing clothing made of synthetic fabrics;
2. Your clothing rubs against the seat;
3. The battery is rubbed against the carpet or other synthetic material;
4. The battery is wiped with a piece of cloth.

## Description of positive and negative terminals on the battery



The positive battery terminal has a "+" mark around itself, and the negative battery terminal has a "-" mark around itself.

## Jump start




Ⓐ: Positive terminal in the fuse box of the defective vehicle

Ⓑ: Rescue vehicle battery/onboard emergency power supply

Ⓒ: Ground point on the faulty vehicle (recommended engine lugs)

**Notice**

At the time of jump starting, after connecting the jumper cables in the engine compartment, disconnect the battery cables in the trunk and then apply the high voltage to avoid short circuiting the vehicle.

1. If the battery of rescue vehicle is far away from the battery of faulty vehicle, park two vehicles in such a way that their batteries come closer to each other;
2. Apply parking brake;
3. Set the shift lever to "P";
4. Switch off all electrical consumers (such as the light, heater and A/C);
5. Turn off the vehicle power supply;
6. Open the engine hood and remove the fuse box cover;
7. Connect the red positive jumper cable by connecting the positive terminal of the inoperative battery to that of the other battery, as shown in the figure ①→② . Connect it carefully so as to avoid short circuit;
8. Connect the black negative jumper cable by connecting the negative terminal to the ground point, as shown in the figure ③→④. Connect it carefully so as to avoid short circuit;
9. Start the engine of rescue vehicle to run it for several minutes;
10. Depress the accelerator pedal of rescue vehicle to keep the engine running at about 2,000r/min;
11. Start the faulty vehicle as usual;
12. When the faulty vehicle starts, remove the jumper cables one by one in the order reverse to connection so as to avoid short circuit.
13. Connect the 12V battery cable in the trunk.

**Caution**

At the time of jump starting, make sure that the high voltage battery capacity is sufficient; otherwise, you may not be able to start the vehicle properly.

**Notice**

- Be sure to connect the positive battery terminal (+) of one battery to that of the other. Connect the negative battery terminal (-) of the rescue vehicle to the body ground instead of the negative battery terminal of the faulty vehicle.
- While connecting or disconnecting the jumper cable, first connect or disconnect one jumper cable, and then connect or disconnect the other jumper cable; be careful to avoid short circuit.
- Confirm that the jumper cable will not contact any moving parts of the engine.
- Confirm that the clamp of jumper cable does not contact other metals.
- When operating on or around the battery, wear proper goggles, and remove the finger ring, bracelet and any other ornaments.
- While removing the jumper cables, turn on the blower and rear windshield heater of the faulty vehicle to reduce the voltage peak generated when the cable are being removed, so as to avoid sparks.

- In case of reversed polarity of positive and negative battery terminals during jump starting, it may cause damage to the vehicle (e.g., damage to vehicle fuse/relay, etc.) and may even cause the battery to explode.
- Improper jump starting will cause battery explosion, resulting in serious injury or death, and also vehicle damage. Always observe instructions in this section.
- The battery is always surrounded by explosive hydrogen. The battery must be kept far away from any fire spark and open fire.
- Never connect the negative battery terminal (-) of the rescue vehicle to the negative battery terminal (-) of the faulty vehicle. Otherwise, the spark generated at the moment of connecting the cable may ignite the gas produced by the battery and cause an explosion.
- Do not connect the negative jumper cable to a component of the fuel system or a brake line. Otherwise, it may cause a fire.
- During jump starting, never lean over the battery. Be careful not to get burned by acid.

- Never make battery electrolyte splashed to your eyes, skin and clothes, or any painted surfaces. The battery electrolyte is corrosive acid solution and may therefore cause serious burn injury. If it contacts any part of your body, immediately rinse the surface with a plenty of water.
- Place the battery at the place out of reach of children.
- The rated voltage of the battery in the rescue vehicle must be 12V. Use of a battery of incorrect rated voltage will cause damage to vehicle.
- Never try to jump start a frozen battery. Otherwise, it may cause the batter to explode and result in a serious accident.

## Precautions

When the vehicle needs towing, always observe the local regulations. Improper towing method will damage the vehicle. To use the correct towing method and protect the vehicle from accidental damage, it is recommended to find professional road rescuer to tow the vehicle.

During towing, the driver and rescuer shall pay attention to the followings:

- Before towing, please confirm that the transmission, the steering system and the transmission system are all in working state. If any of the above systems is damaged, the vehicle must be loaded onto a flatbed tow truck or be towed with the front wheels lifted.
- The drive (front) wheels must be off the ground during towing.
- The parking brake must be released when the rear wheels of the vehicle are on the ground during towing. (refer to page 127 for the method to release the parking brake)
- While towing the vehicle, activate the hazard warning light.
- Carry the key with you instead of leaving it inside the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

- If the faulty vehicle cannot supply voltage, the brake and turn signal lights of the vehicle will not work. Never tow the vehicle in this case. Otherwise, there is a risk of accident.
- Engine start via pushing or towing is not applicable for the vehicle because such method cannot start the engine and may cause damage to transmission.

## Method of towing




You'd better to fix the faulty vehicle to the rescue vehicle since it is the best way of towing.







Alternatively, fix the front (rear) wheel of the faulty vehicle on the towing truck, and then fix the rear (front) wheel of the faulty vehicle on the towing dolly.




Alternatively, it is possible to fix both front wheels to the rescue vehicle and lay both rear wheels on the ground for towing. The following points shall apply while towing the vehicle in the above way:

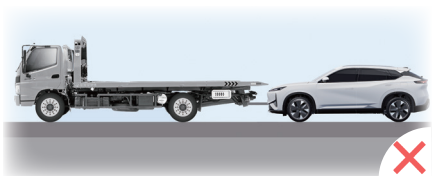
- Ensure that there is an appropriate ground clearance underneath the rear of the vehicle;
- Switch the towed vehicle power supply to "OFF" mode.
- Secure the steering wheel in the forward-facing position with a rope or similar.
- Shift the transmission to "N";
- Release the parking brake.
- Install the safety chain for towing;
- During towing, the vehicle speed shall not exceed 50km/h.

## Illustration of towing vehicle in wrong way



**⚠ Warning**

Never tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground; otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged.

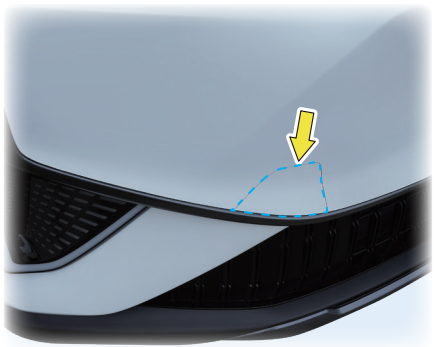


**⚠ Warning**

Towing with four wheels on the ground is prohibited strictly in any conditions, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

## Towing eye position

### Front towing eye of vehicle



The mounting position for front towing eye is located on the right side of the front bumper.

Carefully pry off the mounting hole cover of the towing eye from the front bumper at the opening above the towing eye mounting hole cover by using a slotted screwdriver or a key covered with a piece of cloth.



**Installation of towing eye:**

1. Take out the removable towing eye from the foam pad in the trunk.
2. Manually screw the towing eye fully clockwise into the towing eye mounting hole.
3. Tighten the towing eye firmly.

**Removal of towing eye:**

1. Loosen and remove the towing eye counterclockwise.
2. Refit the mounting hole cover on the bumper and press until it clips into place.
3. Place the towing eye in the driver's tools.

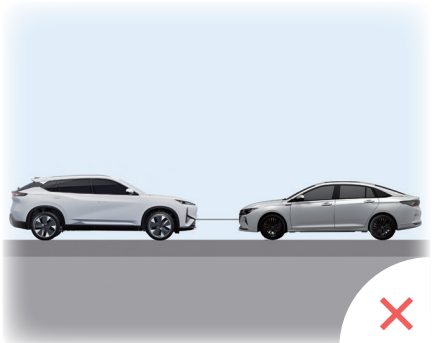
## Towing trapped vehicle

The towing eye shall be used when a tire of the vehicle is trapped in sandy, snowy or muddy road and the vehicle cannot run out of the road.

- Only the towing eye in the vehicle can be used. Do not tie the towing device to other parts of the vehicle body. Otherwise, it may damage the body.
- The towing eye will be subject to large force when the vehicle is towed. Always pull the vehicle in a straight line but not in an angle with the towing eye.

**Notice**

- During towing, nobody is allowed to stay around the traction line.
- Never allow the wheels to slide and idle at high speed when they are stuck in sandy or muddy road; otherwise, the tire may burst to cause, resulting in accidents, or overheating or damage of other vehicle parts.



**Notice**

The towing eye is only used when this vehicle is towed, and cannot be used to tow other vehicles.

The vehicle has the SOS function. The SOS button and the Service button are located on the rear of the ceiling light panel.

There are two ways to trigger the SOS function as follows:

- Press and hold the SOS button for more than 2 seconds to trigger the emergency call; if you need to cancel the emergency call, you can press the Service button.

As the emergency rescue function is affected by many unexpected factors, the following situations (including but not limited to) may cause the rescue call to be unavailable:

- The emergency rescue system (including the Telematics system, microphone, speaker, emergency rescue button, etc.) is damaged or malfunctioning, and therefore the emergency rescue function can not be triggered.
- The emergency rescue call cannot be triggered in case of weak signal strength, or signal interference or shielding.
- When the GPS positioning signal is weak or the device is damaged, it may not be able to locate the exact position of the vehicle.
- Emergency service is unavailable due to force majeure factors such as natural disasters or public communication failures.
- Other objective factors make the emergency call unavailable. The emergency call cannot be canceled manually during the procedure.

# 4. Maintenance

**Instructions for maintenance .....184**
**Routine maintenance .....185**
Instruction for routine maintenance .....185
Precautions for routine maintenance....185
Exterior routine maintenance items.....185
Interior routine maintenance items.....186
Other routine maintenance items .....187
Exterior cleaning.....188
Interior cleaning.....190
Selecting sunshade film*.....192
Vehicle corrosion protection .....192
Hood.....193
Operation instructions for routine maintenance.....194
**Scheduled maintenance .....212**
Schedule of Regular Maintenance Items ... 213
**Recycling and environmental protection.....216**

## Instructions for maintenance

As the distance driven increases, the parts of the vehicle will gradually wear out and the technical condition will deteriorate. It is required to perform maintenance to the vehicle when it is in service so as to ensure the vehicle performance is in good condition and the vehicle may hold its value when it is resold.

There are two types of maintenance: regular maintenance and routine maintenance, which includes daily vehicle washing, body beauty, corrosion protection, recycling some waste materials and environmental protection after maintenance.

The routine maintenance shall be carried out by authorized dealer, and daily maintenance shall be mainly carried out by the driver.

All maintenance or inspection operations shall be performed according to the safety practices, as incorrect operation may cause malfunction or damage to the vehicle, or even an accident.

**Notice**

- Please perform scheduled maintenance to your vehicle according to the First and Regular Maintenance Schedule. Failure to perform regular maintenance on the vehicle in a timely manner may degrade its performance, cause damage to the vehicle, and result in rejection to warranty claims.
- Before routine maintenance, take personal protection measures.

Before routine maintenance, ensure the vehicle is in the following condition:

- Park the vehicle on a flat and safe road;
- Apply parking brake;
- Turn off the vehicle power supply;
- Wait for a period of time until the vehicle cools down before operating.

**Notice**

- Never allow any spark or flame to be close to any part of fuel system and the battery.
- Avoid direct skin contact with engine oil or coolant.
- Remove foreign objects in the engine compartment in a timely manner during daily inspection or scheduled maintenance. Do not leave any flammable items such as the glove, rag, etc. or tools in the engine compartment. The leftover items may cause engine malfunction or damage, or even cause a fire.

### Precautions for high-voltage safety

- When cleaning the vehicle, it is prohibited to splash a large amount of water onto the tailgate, as there is a risk of high-voltage electric shock.
- During routine maintenance, do not touch the high voltage harness (orange harness), as there is a risk of electric shock.

## Instruction for routine maintenance

Routine maintenance is an item that shall be checked every day before normal driving. This is necessary if the vehicle is to run continuously and properly. It is the driver's responsibility for performing routine maintenance.

Routine maintenance involves the routine maintenance of the exterior, the interior and other parts of the vehicle as well as the vehicle cleaning.

Routine maintenance and inspection can be carried out by the driver or by an authorized dealer if necessary.

## Precautions for routine maintenance

The driver, when carrying out daily maintenance, should pay attention to the safety and abide by the safety operation rules to avoid personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

The removal, installation, replacement and maintenance of vehicle parts shall be carried out by professional technicians. If you have any questions about the maintenance and repair of the vehicle, please consult an authorized dealer.

## Exterior routine maintenance items

Every day before normal driving, it is required to carry out routine maintenance according to the methods stated in this section.

If any abnormal sound, vibration or odor is found, be sure to find the cause immediately or go to an authorized dealer for maintenance.

To start any inspection or maintenance, please follow the description in "Precautions for routine maintenance".

### Doors & engine hood

Check whether all doors, engine hood and tailgate can be operated normally.

Check whether all the door locks function normally. Lubricate the hinges and lock catch when necessary.

Check that after lock hook is released, the engine hood can still be kept closed under the action of the safety lock hook.

### lights

Clean the front and rear headlights regularly. Check that the brake lights, turn signal lights, headlights and other lighting equipment function normally and are fastened securely. Check that the front headlights are at the correct illumination height.

### Tire

Before long-distance driving, measure the tire pressure with a pressure gauge. If necessary, adjust the pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, to the specified pressure. Carefully check the tires for cuts, bulges, cracks, excessive wear or other damage.

### Windshield

Clean the windshield in a timely manner. Check the windshields for cracks or other damage at least every half year.

### Brake disc

When the vehicle is parked for a long time, rust will occur on the surface of the brake disc. At this time, you only need to drive the vehicle and apply the brake a few times to remove the rust spots on the surface of the brake disc.

### A/C air inlet

Regularly remove leaves, petals, pollens and other debris from the vent trim panel. Remove snow from the vent trim panel in time, especially in rainy and snowy days, to ensure the A/C inlet and the drip channel are clear. Otherwise, the drip channel outlet may be clogged, have consequence on the A/C and even causing the A/C system to malfunction.

If the vent trim panel is not cleaned for a long time, the leaves, petals, pollen and other debris on it may become moldy, which then produces odor in the passenger compartment.

### Sunroof

The sunroof rails and grooves may be cleaned regularly with a rag to prevent debris from blocking the sunroof drain holes so as to avoid water entering the vehicle.

## Interior routine maintenance items

### Brake pedal

Check whether the brake pedal operates correctly, and ensure that there is adequate clearance under the brake pedal when it is fully depressed and that the floor mat does not interfere with brake pedal operation.

### Accelerator pedal

Check whether the accelerator pedal operates normally, and ensure that the accelerator pedal is free from blockage and uneven force application. It must be ensured that there is adequate clearance under the accelerator pedal when it is fully depressed and that the floor mat does not interfere with accelerator pedal operation.

### Steering wheel

Check the steering wheel for excessive free stroke, hard steering or other abnormal noise.

### Seat belt

Check whether all parts of the seat belt system (such as buckle, latch plate and retractor) work normally and smoothly, and are installed securely. Check whether the seat belt is cracked, scratched, worn or damaged.

### Warning light, indicator and buzzer

Ensure that all warning lights, indicators and buzzers can work normally.

### Windshield defogger

When operating the A/C, check whether there is sufficient air out of the outlets of defroster and defogger appropriately.

### Wiper & washer

Check whether the wiper and washer work normally, and make sure that there is no scratch on the windshield after wiper blade operation. Otherwise, replace the wiper blades promptly.

## Other routine maintenance items

### Engine oil

Refer to “Inspection and change of engine oil” in this section for details about inspecting engine oil.

### Engine coolant

Refer to “Inspecting and replenishing engine coolant” in this section for details about inspecting engine coolant.

### Brake fluid

Refer to “Inspection and change of brake fluid” in this section for details about inspecting brake fluid.

### Windshield washer fluid

Refer to “Adding windshield washer fluid” in this section for details about inspecting and adding windshield washer fluid.

### Battery

Refer to “Inspection of battery” in this section for details about inspecting battery and adding electrolyte.

### Windshield wiper

Refer to “Cleaning of wiper blade” and “Replacement of wiper blade” in this section for details about inspecting and replacing the windshield wiper and wiper blade.

### Wheels and tires

Refer to “Inspection of wheels and tires” in this section for details about inspecting wheels and tires.

### Fluid leakage

After a period of time since the vehicle stops, check for any leakage of fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids under the vehicle. Water drops caused by A/C operation is normal. In the case of any leakage or distinct gasoline odor, please check and identify the cause for immediate repair.

## Exterior cleaning

### When to wash the vehicle

Please clean the vehicle to protect the body paint in the following cases:

1. Driving in rainy days. Acid rain may damage the paintwork;
2. After driving on roads along the coast, the bodywork may rust due to seawater erosion;
3. Such contaminants as brake fluid, soot, birds' droppings, resins, metal grains or insects are attached to the body surface;
4. Dust or slurry accumulates on the body surface.

### Cleaning method

Wash off the dirt on the vehicle with wet sponge and plenty of water.

Mix neutral soapy water or detergent (special soap for vehicle cleaning or ordinary dish washing detergent) with clean and moderate water to wash the vehicle clean.

Rinse the vehicle clean with plenty of clear water.

After that, wipe the vehicle with a piece of special cloth to avoid spot marks remaining after the vehicle is dried.

**Notice**

- The seams, doors, windows and engine hood, etc. are most likely to be corroded by the road anti-freezing salt Hence, these parts have to be wiped up frequently.
- Make sure that the drain hole under the door is unblocked.
- Before cleaning the vehicle, rinse the underbody and wheels with water, so as to remove mud, salt and other dirt.
- Do not clean the vehicle surface with such solvents as strong household soap and strong chemical detergent, etc.
- Never clean the vehicle while the body is hot. Otherwise water spots will remain on the paintwork.
- Do not clean the bodywork with hard leather or rough cloth.
- In case of car washing in the north in winter, remove the water in the gaps around the hidden door handles to avoid ice freezing and causing the door handles not to unfold electrically.
- In cold weather, do not spray water directly on the door lock, doors, door handles and other gaps; otherwise, the door handles, door locks and seals may freeze and fail to open.

**Removing stain**

Remove the oil stains, industrial dirt, insect stains and resin on the underbody of the vehicle in time to avoid damaging the paint or leaving stains.

**Waxing**

Frequent waxing can protect the paintwork, and keep the vehicle nice.

Mechanical abrasion or intense polishing on the electrophoretic primer/varnish may scratch the painted surface or result in vortex-shaped mark.

Polishing is required after waxing so as to remove residues on the surface and resist weathering.

**Notice**

- Always clean the vehicle thoroughly before waxing.
- Select wax in accordance with the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Never use wax containing abradant, mixture or detergent, which may damage the body paint.
- Do not use insect repellent on the interior and exterior surfaces of the vehicle as it may damage the paintwork.

**Cleaning of external glass**

While removing dirt from the windshield with the windshield washer, spray windshield washer fluid onto the glass surface and then wipe the window; otherwise the wiper blade and the glass surface may be damaged

Even in light rain, spray windshield washer fluid onto the glass surface and then wipe the window.

Please use the windshield washer fluid sold by an authorized dealer.

**Maintenance of underbody**

In regions where anti-freezing salt has to be used in winter, clean the underbody frequently to protect the underbody against corrosion due to dirt or salt accumulation.

In winter or spring, it is required to check the sealing of the vehicle, and if necessary, contact an authorized dealer for treatment.

**Cleaning of aluminum alloy rims**

Clean the aluminum alloy rims frequently, especially in those regions where anti-freezing salt will be sprayed on the roads in winter. If the wheel contacts the salt, the aluminum alloy rims will rust and fade.

**Notice**

Operate as follows in order to avoid staining and fading the rims:

- Never clean the wheels with detergent containing strong acid or strong alkali.
- Do not use wheel detergent when the wheels are very hot. The wheel temperature shall be the same as the ambient temperature.
- After applying the detergent, rinse the wheels within 15 min to wash off the detergent.

**Cleaning of wheels**

Wash the wheels while washing the vehicle to keep the appearance tidy.

When replacing the wheels or washing the underbody, clean the inside of wheels.

While cleaning the wheels, do not use abrasive cleanser.

Regularly check the rims for pits or erosion, which may result in pressure loss or rim damage.

It is recommended to wax the wheels to prevent any corrosion due to anti-freezing salt sprayed on roads in winter.

- Cleaning of chrome-plated parts

Regularly wash the chrome-plated parts with non-abrasive chrome polishing agent to keep them bright.

**Precautions for washing**



Never rinse the engine compartment with water. Otherwise, it may activate fault related to the electrical wiring, engine and related components in the engine compartment.

Never allow water or other fluids to contact interior electrical components and air vent, or the electrical components will get damaged.

Never use water to rinse the fuel filler and charging port.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids to perform maintenance items, because these liquids are all toxic and flammable, and they can easily cause fire and explosion!

### Precautions for washing vehicle using an automatic vehicle washer

If the AUTO HOLD is enabled, the vehicle will brake automatically under certain circumstances. To prevent damage to the vehicle, deactivate the AUTO HOLD when washing the vehicle with a vehicle washing unit. (Refer to page<?>)

Before washing the vehicle, please make sure it meets the following conditions:

- Windows and the sunroof are completely closed.
- A/C system is off
- Windshield wiper & washer combination switch is at the initial position.

While washing the vehicle using an automatic vehicle washer, make sure the vehicle meets the following conditions:

- Fold the exterior rearview mirrors.
- Shift the gear to "N".
- Release the parking brake.
- Release the service brake pedal.

**Notice**

- The vehicle is moved in towing mode in an automatic car wash. Damage to the transmission can be caused if the shift lever is in P position. If the vehicle is towed forcibly when the parking brake has been applied, the vehicle may be damaged.
- Before washing the vehicle using an automatic vehicle washer, remove dirt and large amounts of dust on the vehicle to avoid damage to the body.
- After washing the vehicle using the automatic vehicle washer, remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades to reduce the potential dirt may accumulate on the windshield and scraping noise.

## Interior cleaning

Remove dust and dirt from the vehicle interior (such as interior trims, plastic components and seats, etc.) with dust collector or duster; use a piece of clean and soft cloth soaked with soft soapy water to remove dirt from plastic and leather products, and then wipe them dry with a piece of soft cloth.

For maintenance of leather appearance, pay attention to the related requirements of the manufacturer, as some protective agents contain chemicals and they may damage or corrode the leather cover of seat. Scrub the leather surfaces with a piece of soft cloth wetted by a little clear water.

**Notice**

- Never wipe with any light gasoline, diluent or similar fluid.
- Tiny dirt particles will wear and damage the leather surface, so they shall be removed immediately. Do not use leather soap, wax polish, cleaning fluid, solvent, detergent or cleanser containing ammonia water, which will damage the natural gloss of the leather.

**Notice**

- Without any recommendation of the manufacturer, never use any fabric protective agent.
- Do not wipe the leather surface with cleanser for glasses and plastics. Otherwise the leather surface may be damaged.

## Floor mat

The use of floor mats will extend the service life of the carpet and make it easy to clean the vehicle.

The floor mat used shall be suitable for the vehicle and fixed correctly and reliably so as not to prevent the operation of the pedal.

**Warning**

Any unfixed floor mat will slide and then impede the operation of brake and accelerator pedals, thus causing a serious accident.

## Cleaning of internal glass

Do not use a bladed tool or chlorinated disinfectant for cleaning of internal glass, as this will damage the rear windshield defogger wires.

In case of fogging on the inside window, it is possible spray an appropriate amount of special anti-fog agent on the window to prevent fog.

## Seat belt

The seat belt webbing can be cleaned with a sponge soaked with a mild detergent.

A cleaned seat belt webbing can only be used when it has been completely dry. A wet seat belt webbing shall never be retracted back into the retractor so as to avoid damage to the retractor.

Never clean the seat belt webbing with bleaching powder, dye and chemical solvent, or it will be seriously damaged.

## Leather seat cover

Leather seat cover has high quality, and can keep good performance if being maintained properly.

Long-time accumulation of dust and dirt can affect the luster of the leather, and also cause wear and aging of leather. Therefore, routine maintenance and cleaning is very necessary.

Dirty leather surface shall be cleaned with wet cloth or dilute soapy water. Water on the leather surface or in the seam shall be wiped away in time.

It is recommended to use the leather maintenance products of genuine brands, and protect the leather seat cover against long-time exposure to intense radiation.

**Warning**

- Never clean the leather with dissoluble solvents, strong cleaner and other products.
- While installing the seat cover, do not cover the side airbags on the outside of the seat backrest. Otherwise, it may hinder the deployment of the side airbags.

## Selecting sunshade film*



Violet: UV light

Blue: Visible light

Red: Infrared light

The main purpose of applying sunshade film on the window is to reduce UV and IR in the vehicle while ensuring better visibility and privacy for the vehicle.

Choose a sunshade film with high reflectivity from UV to IR and high transmittance to visible light, i.e., a high-definition sunshade film.

**Notice**

- Don't pay too much attention to sun protection, heat insulation and privacy. Make sure that the light transmittance (i.e., the transmittance of sunshade film × the transmittance of window glass) is not lower than 70% when the sunshade film has been applied. Otherwise, it will reduce the driver's visibility, thus largely degrading driving safety.
- Before applying film to the front windshield, please cover the upper surface of the instrument panel with a dry towel or other similar object with good water-absorbing quality to prevent excessive water from flowing onto the electrical parts inside the instrument panel in the process of water spraying during film application; otherwise, the electrical parts may malfunction.

## Vehicle corrosion protection

Frequently wash and wax the vehicle to keep it clean. The anti-freezing agent and snow-melting agent sprayed on roads are corrosive, hence the underbody shall be rinsed immediately after the vehicle has run on such roads.

Regularly check for minor paintwork damage and repair in time.

Check the underbody for accumulation of sands, dirt or saline matter, and if any, rinse it with water immediately.

In some areas, additional anti-rust and anti-corrosion measures may be required, please consult an authorized dealer.

**Notice**

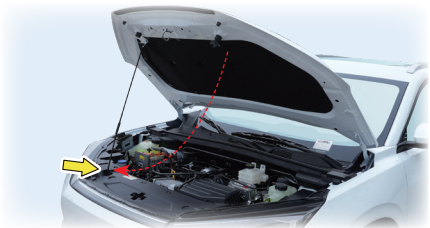
- Never use water to directly rinse off the dirt, sands and other scraps accumulated in the passenger compartment, but use a vacuum cleaner or a broom.
- Do not let water or other fluids contact interior electrical components, or the electrical components will get damaged.

# Hood

## Opening engine hood




1. When you open the driver door, the hood opening handle ① can be seen on the lower left side of the instrument panel. At this time, when you pull the handle outwards twice, the hood will pop up slightly;



2. Lift the engine hood upwards, take out the stay bar and insert it into the support hole (when taking out the stay bar, hold the rubber sleeve end, and take care not to touch the metal part directly, because this part may be hot when the engine just stops).

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not operate the hood lock handle while the engine is running or just after the engine has stopped, as the hood handle is hot at this time and may cause scald. It is necessary to wait for the engine to stop and cool down before opening the hood after operating the hood interior opening handle.
- Do not open the engine hood in the high wind. Otherwise, the engine hood may overturn, causing damage to parts or personnel injury.

## Closing engine hood

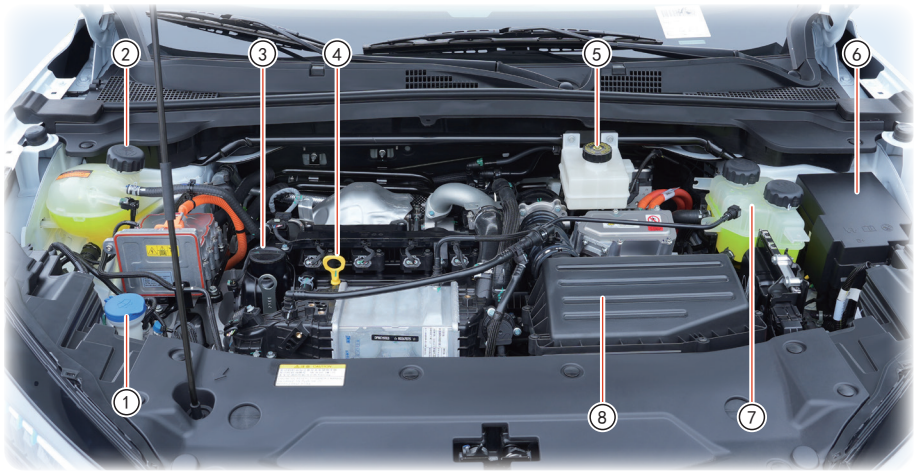
1. Check that there are no other foreign objects in the engine compartment;
2. Hold the engine hood stably and push it upward slightly with one hand. Then detach the stay bar from the support hole with the other hand and clamp it into the mounting point;
3. Lower the engine hood slowly to an opening of 20 cm, then release both hands, and lock the engine hood by its own gravity. After locking, press the hood down to make sure it is locked in place.

**Notice**

- Take care not to pinch any person or object when closing the engine hood.
- Releasing the engine hood manually at a long distance from the top of the front grille, or closing the engine hood forcibly, may cause damage to the headlight and front grille.
- Before driving, be sure to check that the engine hood is closed and locked properly. Otherwise, the engine hood may be opened by the adverse wind formed during driving, resulting in serious accidents.
- If there is steam or smoke coming out from the engine compartment, never open the engine hood, so as to prevent injuries.

## Operation instructions for routine maintenance

### Engine compartment layout




① Windshield washer fluid reservoir filler cap

② Engine coolant reservoir filler cap

③ Engine oil filler cap

④ Engine oil dipstick

⑤ Brake fluid reservoir filler cap

⑥ EJB

⑦ Hybrid system, intercooler system coolant reservoir filler cap

⑧ Air filter

## Safety instructions for operation in engine compartment

Operating to the engine or in the engine compartment (such as checking or adding fluids) may result in safety hazards such as burns, other personal injuries, fires or other accidents. Therefore, pay attention to the relevant warning instructions and safety regulations.

**⚠ Warning**

- If you open the engine hood while the engine is overheating or the engine compartment is on fire, you may be exposed to high-temperature gases or other leaking pressure fluids, posing a risk of personal injury. Engine hood cannot be closed until the overheated engine has been cooled down. If the engine compartment is on fire, keep the engine hood closed and notify the firefighters immediately.
- Check the vehicle for engine oil leakage. Avoid any fluid dripping onto the high-temperature engine or exhaust; otherwise, there is a risk of fire.
- While adding a fluid, do not mix the fluid with any other fluid. Otherwise, it may cause serious malfunction of the vehicle.
- Before operating underneath the vehicle, ensure that the vehicle does not move and that it is reliably supported by suitable stands. If the vehicle is only supported by a vehicle jack, it is not safe to operate under the vehicle.
- Do not unlock the hood while driving; an unlocked hood may open while the vehicle is in motion, obscuring the driver's view and causing a serious accident.
- Make sure the windshield wipers are attached to the windshield before opening the hood. Otherwise, the windshield wipers or hood may be damaged.
- Take care not to pinch any person or object when closing the hood.
- Some parts in the front compartment (such as the radiator fan), may continue to run or suddenly run again even after the vehicle is powered off. There is a risk of personal injury. If it is inevitable to operate on parts in the front compartment, you shall:
  - Power off the vehicle.
  - Avoid touching the danger area around any operating component, such as the rotating area of the fan.
  - Remove all ornaments and watch.
  - Keep clothing, hair, etc. away from any moving part.

## Inspecting and adding coolant

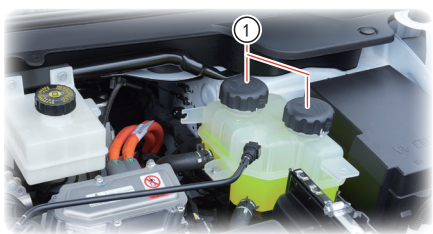
The coolant can play the role of corrosion, cavitation, leakage, radiator boil, scaling and freezing prevention. It can keep the cooling system in the best working condition and ensure the normal working temperature of the cooling components.

### Inspecting coolant level and adding coolant

**Engine coolant reservoir:**




**High voltage battery, motor and intercooler system coolant reservoir:**




MAX: upper limit MIN: lower limit
Inspect the coolant level after the vehicle is cooled down.
A MIN scale and a MAX scale are provided on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is below the MIN scale, please add coolant to the level near the MAX scale. (refer to page 250 for the recommended coolant type.)

Inspect the coolant level. If it is found that a small amount of coolant is consumed, open the coolant reservoir filler cap ①, and add coolant to the level near the MAX scale.

If the coolant is missing in large quantities or frequently, go to an authorized dealer for repair.

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not open the coolant reservoir filler cap before the vehicle has cooled down, because the coolant temperature is very high at this time, and hot coolant or steam may spray out, causing burns.
- Do not mix coolants of different grades or brands. Do not add other fluids or additives into the coolant. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- If the coolant in the coolant reservoir surfers color fade or change, the coolant shall be replaced in time.
- In winter or severe cold regions, the coolant with higher freeze protection shall be used to adapt to the ambient temperature.
- The coolant must be contained in a closed container. Do not allow children to contact it.

### Coolant, replacement

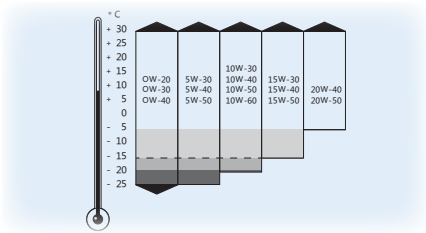
The engine coolant shall be changed regularly in accordance with the provisions of the "First and Routine Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance" section of this manual, and if the engine coolant needs to be changed, please go to an authorized dealer for replacement or repair.

## Inspection and change of engine oil

The engine oil shall be changed regularly in an authorized dealer in accordance with the provisions of the "First and Routine Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance" section of this manual. The service life of engine oil can only be guaranteed if the engine oil is changed as required.

When purchasing engine oil, please check whether the oil of the model and specification indicated on the oil packaging are suitable for the engine and the corresponding environment.

### Recommended SAE viscosity for engine oil

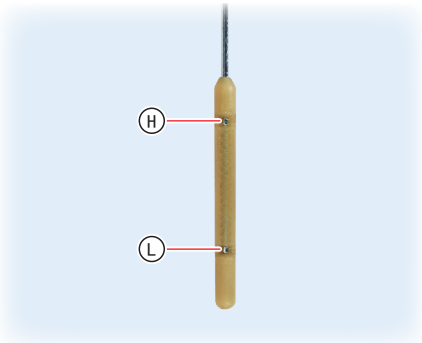



Please select the appropriate engine oil according to ambient temperatures. (For details, please refer to page251)

### Inspection methods of engine oil level

Check the engine oil level with the oil dipstick:

1. Park the vehicle on the flat and solid ground;
2. Start the engine and warm it up until it reaches the normal operating temperature (approx. 5 min);
3. Shut the engine down and wait at least 10 min to allow the engine oil to flow back to the oil sump;
4. Pull out the oil dipstick, wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick with a clean rag, and re-insert the oil dipstick to the end;
5. Pull out the oil dipstick again and inspect that the oil level is between MAX scale and MIN scale.




Engine oil dipstick

Ⓗ: Max. scale of oil

Ⓛ: MIN scale of oil

Engine operation consumes a certain amount of oil which depends on the driving mode and vehicle operation conditions. Therefore, the oil level must be inspected regularly, preferably after each refueling and before long-distance travel. If the oil level is below Ⓛ, remove the oil filler cap and add appropriate amount of oil.

If the vehicle travels on the expressway for a long distance or in the mountains and the engine is running under such harsh conditions in summer, the engine oil level must not be above the MAX scale Ⓗ.

## Adding engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on the flat and solid ground;
2. Open the engine hood.
3. Place a rag around the filler to prevent oil from dripping onto the engine;
4. Counterclockwise turn the oil filler cap to open it;
5. In order to avoid overfilling, add a small amount of oil each time for several times and inspect the oil level; (It takes a few minutes for the oil to flow from the filler to the oil sump.)
6. When the oil level is between MAX scale and MIN scale, stop adding the oil and screw up the oil filler cap;
7. Put away the rag and clean portions around the filler.

**Notice**

Do not start the engine if the oil level is above the MAX scale. Otherwise, the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged. If too much oil is added, contact an authorized dealer to remove the excessive oil.

**Warning**

Engine oil is a highly flammable substance. Be careful when adding the oil. Do not spill oil on the engine parts or exhaust system components that are hot.

## Changing engine oil

**Notice**

Be sure to change the engine oil regularly as specified in the "First and Routine Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance" section of this manual.

Change the engine oil at the authorized dealer.

If the vehicle is running under severe conditions as described below:

- Frequent short-distance travel.
- Long-term idling (such as taxis).
- Running in the dusty region.
- Often towing a trailer.
- Driving in the alpine region.

The number of maintenance of related items must be increased or the maintenance period shortened between regular maintenances.

**Caution**

- The color of the new engine oil will change very quickly after the engine is running for a period of time. This is normal and it is not necessary to change the oil in advance.
- Disposal of used engine oil is a highly professional job, and must be done with necessary expertise and special tools. It is recommended the used engine oil be recycled by an authorized dealer.
- Since the waste oil is extremely harmful to the environment and water, do not pour the waste oil into the sewer or on the soil or lawn.

**Notice**

- In winter or cold regions, the engine oil with higher freeze protection shall be used to adapt to the ambient temperature, and thus to facilitate low temperature start and good lubrication.
- Neither mix engine oil of different grades or brands, nor add other additives into the engine oil. Otherwise the engine may be damaged.

**Notice**

- After the engine oil pressure warning light goes on, continuous driving will seriously damage the engine.
- If the engine oil level is too low, the engine may be damaged; if the engine oil is too much, the engine and the catalytic converter may be damaged.
- If no relevant know-how and tools are available, do not change the engine oil by yourself.
- If the skin is stained with oil, the oil must be thoroughly cleared.
- The oil filler cap must always be screwed up to prevent oil from splashing when the engine is running, thus causing a fire.

## Inspecting and adding brake fluid

Brake fluid is used to transfer pressure in the hydraulic brake system.

If the brake pedal travel has increased unexpectedly or there is a noticeable drop in the brake fluid level, please go to an authorized dealer for inspection of the brake system.

**Notice**

- Brake fluid has strong water absorption capability and shall be stored in a closed container to prevent the brake fluid going bad due to absorbed water.
- Since brake fluid has a corrosive effect on the body paint, the brake fluid splashed on the paint shall be removed in time.
- Brake fluid shall be stored in a place which children are not easily access. If you encounter any accidental drinking of brake fluid, get medical attention immediately.
- Avoid skin or eyes contacting the brake fluid. If you accidentally touch it, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice.
- Be careful not to spill the brake fluid on a hot engine, as this may cause a fire.

## Inspecting brake fluid level



Observe the scales in the brake fluid reservoir.

"MAX": upper limit

"MIN": lower limit

The brake fluid level shall be between MAX and the level 4 mm below MAX.

If the fluid level drops significantly in a short period of time, it indicates that leakage occurred in the brake system. In this case, please contact an authorized dealer to overhaul the brake system as soon as possible.

## Adding brake fluid

If the brake fluid level is below MIN, the brake fluid must be added in time.

**⚠ Warning**

- Neither mix brake fluids of different brands or grades, nor use the used brake fluid to avoid reducing the braking efficiency and causing the brake system to fail.
- The brake fluid level must not be above "MAX" to avoid paint corrosion, part contamination, or even a fire.

**ℹ Caution**

For technical requirements and reasonable replacement intervals of brake fluid, please refer to the provisions of the "First and Periodic Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance" section of this manual.

## Change of brake fluid

In order to ensure the normal operation of the brake system, the brake fluid shall be changed regularly in accordance with the provisions of the "First and Periodic Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance" section of this manual. Changing shall be done by the authorized dealer.

**⚠ Warning**

- Failure to change the brake fluid according to the specified time may cause the brake system to fail and cause a serious accident.
- If the brake fluid level is below MIN, do not drive the vehicle to avoid an accident.
- If the brake fluid remains in the hydraulic system for many years, the brake fluid will also deteriorate. In this case, air lock will be generated in the brake pipe during braking, which will affect the braking efficiency and driving safety, and may even cause the brake system in complete failure, thus causing an accident.

## Inspection of battery

### Battery operation warning symbols and description

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  | Open fires, sparks, glare and smoking are prohibited in the workplace! |
| 2 |  | Wear goggles when handling! |
| 3 |  | Children must stay away from electrolytes and vehicle batteries! |
| 4 |  | Since battery electrolyte is a highly corrosive substance, protective gloves and goggles must be worn during operation! |
| 5 |  | Be sure to read the battery manual carefully before starting work! |
| 6 |  | An explosive mixture will be generated when the battery is charged! |

**⚠ Warning**

- Never allow sparky substances, flame or spark to be close to the battery.
- Do not short-circuit the battery terminals. Otherwise high-energy sparks generated by short circuit may harm the operator.
- Before operating the battery, touch the vehicle body to eliminate any accumulation of static electricity to avoid igniting highly explosive battery gases by the generated spark.
- Since the electrolyte in the battery is highly corrosive, protective gloves and eyeglasses shall be worn. Do not flip the battery, or the electrolyte may flow out of the vent.
- If electrolyte splashes into your eyes, rinse immediately with water for a few minutes and seek medical attention immediately. If the electrolyte splashes on your skin or clothing, immediately absorb it with a dry cloth and rinse with soap and water. If you accidentally drink electrolyte, you shall seek medical attention immediately.
- Children shall stay away from electrolyte and batteries.

### Inspection of battery

1. Check if the battery is well fixed;
2. Check if the positive and negative cable connectors of the battery are loose or corroded;
3. Check the insulation layer of the positive and negative cables of the battery for damage;
4. Keep the battery surface dry and clean to prevent battery vents from being blocked.

If the vehicle needs to be driven for a long distance or after the battery has been used for more than one year, the battery power shall be checked at an authorized dealer.

### Jump start

If jump starting is necessary, please refer to page 176. If the vehicle cannot be started by jump starting or the battery cannot be charged, replace the battery. Please contact the authorized dealer to replace the battery.

### Charging battery

If the vehicle is out of service for a long time, or is frequently started, or is often driven for a short distance in a cold environment, the battery may be under charge and the vehicle cannot be started. In this case, the battery shall be subject to additional charging. Charging shall be done by the authorized dealer.

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not charge the battery before it is removed, or electrical components of the vehicle may be damaged seriously.
- If the battery is frozen in the cold environment, do not attempt to charge the battery as there is a danger of explosion.

### Protection in winter

The starting power provided by the battery at low temperatures is lower than that at normal temperatures, Therefore, before the winter comes, it is better to inspect the battery at an authorized dealer and charge or replace it if necessary.

It will take more time for the battery to be charged in chilly days, and the battery electrolyte may be frozen and the battery may be damaged as a result if the battery is not fully charged. To maintain the maximum efficacy, the battery shall be inspected regularly.

If the vehicle will be parked in severe cold for several weeks or longer, remove the battery and keep it indoor at normal temperature to protect the battery from freezing.

### Long-term parking

If the vehicle will not be in use for more than one months, the negative cable of the battery shall be disconnected, and the battery shall be charged once per month.

If the vehicle is out of service for a long period and the battery is not charged, the battery will fail due to self-discharge.

### Replacement of battery

Be sure to read and follow the safety warning instructions for battery operation before starting work.

When replacing the battery, make sure the battery is installed correctly. Make sure that the battery tray and pressure plate are properly seated to prevent the battery from moving during an accident or emergency braking.

**Notice**

- When removing the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable. Turn off all electrical consumers in the vehicle before connecting the battery again. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

**Notice**

- The battery shall be replaced with the one of the same manufacturer and model at an authorized dealer.
- Only replace with the battery of the same specification. The use of the battery of other specifications may cause that the battery is not installed in place or the battery cable is difficult to be connected due to different positions of the terminal, and may even cause malfunction or damage of the electrical components.
- Removal and refitting of the battery requires certain expertise and tools, as in some cases, the battery and fuse box may be damaged. It is recommended to replace the battery at an authorized dealer.

### Notice for environmental protection



The battery contains contaminants. It is illegal to discard the battery with domestic garbage. Batteries must be sorted out for collection and recycled in an environmentally friendly manner.



Please discard the battery in an environmentally friendly manner. Send the disposed battery to an authorized dealer or a special waste battery recycling point.

## High voltage battery

The main power source of the vehicle is the high voltage battery, which provides the required electric energy for the drive motor and other high voltage components of the vehicle, such as the A/C cooler and heater. The high voltage battery needs to be charged by an external power supply.

For a new vehicle, the driving range of the vehicle will change due to factors such as driving behaviors (e.g. frequent acceleration, braking), road conditions (e.g. long slopes, bumpy roads), use environment (e.g. low temperature) and turning on of the electrical equipment (e.g. A/C).

The high voltage battery is a chemical product and its capacity will decrease naturally. Therefore, for vehicle that have been used for a period of time, its driving range will be reduced.

The high voltage battery is a kind of high-voltage energy storage equipment, which is a hazardous material. So, non-professionals and improper operation and use may cause electric shock, combustion, explosion and other serious consequences.

**Notice**

- In order to keep the high voltage battery in the best condition, please use the charging equipment to fully charge the high voltage battery regularly (it is recommended to fully charge the battery at least once a week).
- Before storing the vehicle for a long period of time, please make sure to charge it to the power level of 100% and then discharge it to a power level between 30% and 50%. If the storage time exceeds three months, the battery must be charged regularly, otherwise it may cause excessive discharge of the battery, thereby reducing the performance of the battery. This will cause vehicle failure and damage and invalidate the warranty.
- The high voltage battery pack cannot be opened by non-professionals without permission. In case of high voltage battery failure, it is recommended to contact a franchise store.
- Unauthorized removal or disassembly of the high voltage battery is strictly prohibited. Otherwise the environment pollution and safety accidents arising therefrom shall be held by the responsible units or individuals.
- Since the high voltage battery is installed underneath the vehicle, it is easy to scrape and collide. Therefore, in case of any abnormality found after the vehicle is driven on non-normal road surfaces, you shall contact a franchise store in time to check whether there is any deformation, shell cracks, etc. of the high voltage battery system.

## Precautions for usage of high voltage battery

The installation and maintenance of the high voltage battery must be operated by franchise stores, and it must be used according to the relevant safety regulations. It is strictly prohibited for non-professionals to install and maintain the high voltage battery as well as abuse it beyond the scope. No warranty will be given for damage to the battery and other losses caused by the use of the battery not in accordance with the specified requirements or beyond the scope of the specified use. Note the following points:

- Moisture and waterproof: The high voltage battery is a kind of high-voltage energy storage equipment, and contains many high-voltage control lines and cells. The liquid entering into the high voltage battery may lead to short circuit, leakage, and corrosion of cells, electronic circuits and connector. So it is necessary to make sure that the high voltage battery will not be immersed by all kinds of liquids, and moist air will not get into the interior of the high voltage battery.
- Environmental insulation: The high voltage battery working in the best working temperature range can boast a longer service life and improved safety performance. Therefore, heat insulation and ventilation shall be ensured around the vehicle parking area.
- Anti-vibration and anti-collision: The cells inside the high voltage battery are connected in series and installed with a management system and various sensing devices. So please be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent the high voltage battery from bumping.

## Maintenance of high voltage battery

When the instrument cluster shows that the high voltage battery level is low, please charge the vehicle immediately, so as to prevent the vehicle stop due to insufficient power.

During the use of the vehicle, the high voltage battery shall be fully charged at least once a month.

When the vehicle is parked for a long time, it is recommended to charge the high voltage battery to 100% every three months, and then discharge it to 30%~50% for storage.

It is strictly forbidden to flush the underbody high voltage components and high voltage batteries with water to avoid damage to them.

## Technical requirements for storage of high voltage battery

It can be stored in a dry and ventilated environment for 3 months; In case of more than 3 months, it is recommended that the high voltage battery be supplementally charged to 100% SOC every 3 months during the storage period, and then discharged to between 30% and 50% SOC for storage.

If the vehicle is not used for a long period of time without supplemental charging of the high voltage battery, the high voltage battery may be damaged.

### Notice

- When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the high voltage battery will also gradually discharge. Therefore, if the vehicle has been parked for a period of time, the battery level will also become low or even zero.
- The working temperature of the high voltage battery is -20°C - 45°C. If the battery works at temperature beyond this range for a long time, it will directly affect the performance of the vehicle and the service life of the high voltage battery.
- Keep the vehicle clean, and avoid parking the vehicle in humid, high temperature and other environments, so as to avoid high voltage battery failure or damage.
- Use the on-board charger to charge the vehicle as much as possible. If the DC fast charging is used frequently, the service life of the high voltage battery will be seriously affected.
- For a new vehicle, the high voltage battery shall be fully charged before the first use, so as not to affect the performance of the high voltage battery.
- Passengers shall not stay in the vehicle while charging.
- The vehicle shall be parked in a place with well ventilation for charging.
- Try not to continue driving the vehicle after the battery is almost depleted, which will seriously reduce the service life of the high voltage battery.

- In order to maintain the life of the high voltage battery, it is recommended to charge the high voltage battery in time. When it is parked for a long time, it is recommended to charge the high voltage battery to 100% SOC every three months, and then discharge it to 30%~50% for storage.

### High voltage battery recycling

When the vehicle meets the end-of-life requirement, it is recommended to operate according to the following process:

1. Send the vehicle to a franchise store, who will evaluate the residual value of the high voltage battery.
2. Send the evaluated vehicle to the end-of-life automobile recycling and disassembling organization to dismantle the high voltage battery.
3. Transfer the disassembled high voltage battery from the automobile recycling and disassembling organization to the recycling service outlets, which will buy back the high voltage battery.

**⚠ Warning**

The vehicle owner has the responsibility and obligation to transfer the used high voltage battery to recycling service outlets. Handling over the used high voltage battery to other units or individuals and removal, dismantling without approval are not allowed; Otherwise, you should bear the corresponding responsibility for the consequential environmental pollution or safety accidents.

## Adding windshield washer fluid



If the washer nozzle can only intermittently spray the washer fluid, or can not spray the washer fluid at all, it means the washer fluid may be in short supply. If it is found that the washer fluid level is too low, add the washer fluid into the reservoir in time.

**Notice**

- In winter, to avoid freeze, select some antifreeze windshield washer fluid.
- The windshield washer fluid is poisonous and shall be stored in a marked container out of children's reach.

## Cleaning wiper blade

Any contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blade will reduce the wiping effect of the wiper. The main sources of pollution are dust, silt, insects, sap and water wax used in the vehicle washing machine. If the wiper involves dirt, use the high-quality cleaner or mild detergent to clean the windshield and wiper blade, then rinse them thoroughly with clean water. The steps to clean the wiper blade are as follows:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield;
2. Grasp the wiper arm;
3. Carefully wipe off the dust and dirt on the wiper blade and the windshield surface with a soft cloth.
4. After cleaning, gently put the wiper arm back to its original position.

**Notice**

- When the windshield is dry or the rainfall is low, do not use the wiper. Otherwise, it may damage the windshield and wiper blade. It is recommended to spray water before using it.
- In order to ensure the wiping effect and the service life of the wiper blade, it is recommended to clean the windshield and wiper blade regularly. The wiper blade shall be gently wiped with a sponge or a soft cloth to avoid abrasion of the wiper blade. If the windshield is still not clean after wiping, please replace the wiper blade.
- If it is cold, inspect if the wiper blade is frozen before turning on the windshield washer. The windshield washer can only be turned on when the wiper is not interfered or obstructed.
- In case the vehicle is driven in hot summer or snow and ice weather or the vehicle is out of service for a long time, the wiper arm can be lifted to slow down the aging of the wiper blade.

## Replacement of wiper blade

The wiper blade must be inspected regularly and the damaged wiper blade replaced in time. Otherwise, the windshield glass will be scratched.

Wiper blades shall be replaced every half a year.

**Notice**

- Do not apply dry wiping to avoid wear and damage of the wiper blade and scratching of the windshield, which will affect the safety of driving.
- Do not turn on the power before the wiper blade replacement is completed, to avoid the sudden action of the wiper damaging the windshield and engine hood.
- Do not open the engine hood before folding the wiper arm away from the windshield. Do not fold the wiper arm back to the windshield if the wiper blade is not installed to avoid damage to the windshield and wiper.

## Vertical folding method of front windshield wiper arm

In the event of replacement of the wiper blade, cold weather, etc., it is necessary to vertically fold the front wiper arm by doing the following:

1. Switch the vehicle power supply to "ON" mode;
2. Tap the "Wiper Maintenance Mode" slider in the "Vehicle Center" - "Vehicle Settings" menu of the CSD, and the slider will be highlighted;
3. At this time, the wiper arm will turn to the highest point and stop;
4. Fully lift and vertically fold the wiper arm.

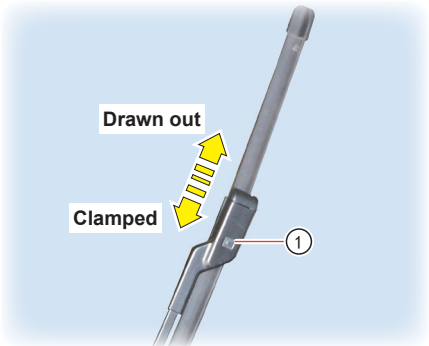
## Replacement method of front windshield wiper blade



1. Put a thick towel at the windshield under the wiper arm to prevent the wiper arm from accidentally bouncing back and damaging the windshield, and then fully stand up the wiper arm; (for the operation method, please refer to "Vertical folding method of front windshield wiper arm" on this page.)

**Caution**

When replacing the front windshield wiper blade, be sure to stop the wiper arm at its highest point. Otherwise, it will not be possible to replace the wiper blade by lifting the wiper arm properly.




2. Press the wiper blade lock button (1) while holding the wiper blade and then pulling it out slightly in the direction of the arrow;
3. Replace with a new wiper blade;
4. Insert the wiper blade into the mounting slot of the wiper arm. Installation is completed satisfactorily when there is a "click" and the lock button (1) pops out of the mounting hole of the wiper arm and becomes flush with the surface;
5. Check to ensure that the wiper blade locks reliably, and then gently lower the wiper arm back onto the windshield and take down the towel;
6. When you switch the vehicle power supply to ON position, the wiper arm automatically returns to its lowest point;
7. Lift the wiper switch toward the plane of the steering wheel and check whether the wiper is working properly.

## Visual inspection of wheels and tires

Four tires shall be inspected before driving, and the tread and sidewall shall be inspected regularly for bulge, scratches, abnormal wear, cracks, and iron nailing. If the above phenomenon occurs, please go to an authorized dealer for inspection and replacement.

Some tire defects are not easy to be found. If abnormal vibration, noise or deviation of the vehicle is found during driving, there may be a tire fault. In this case, stop immediately and check whether the wheel and tire are damaged under the condition of ensuring safety. Please contact an authorized dealer for inspection when necessary.

Common causes of tire damage:

- Impact or friction against the curb.
- The vehicle quickly passes through the deep pit on the road.
- The tire pressure is too low or too high.

Regularly check the tread depth and tread condition along the entire tire width. A low tread depth will reduce the tire adhesion. Especially on slippery roads, it will increase the risk of hydroplaning and seriously affect the safety of driving.




Tread wear mark (1) indicates the safe use limit of the tire.

If the tread is worn to the wear mark, replace the tire.

Inspect if all wheels are equipped with valve caps and inspect the valve for dirt and air leaks. Do not install any parts on the valve.

Inspect the condition of the rim. If the rim is distorted, cracked, corroded or severely scratched, it shall be replaced in time. If the wheel bolts are often loosened, the wheels and wheel bolts shall be replaced.

**⚠ Warning**

If the tire is bulged or cracked, stop driving to prevent flat tires during continuous driving. Otherwise, traffic accident and personal injury may occur.

**Notice**

For vehicles stored for a long time, inspect the tire pressure in time and move the tires to avoid long-term pressure on the part contacting the ground of the tires, resulting in permanent tire deformation and affecting use.

## Inspection of tire pressure

### General description

Proper tire pressure can extend the service life of the tire while improving the driving comfort, fuel economy and operating stability of the vehicle.

A low tire pressure will aggravate the tire wear, greatly affect the operating stability and fuel economy of the vehicle, and increase the risk of tire failure. A high tire pressure will cause the vehicle to run unstably and the tires are unevenly worn, which may reduce the service life of the tire.

Inspect the tire pressure, including tire pressure of spare wheel, at least once a month, and inspect it after driving on rough terrain or before long-distance driving.

Always inspect the tire pressure after the tire has cooled down. Cold tires mean that the vehicle has not been driven for at least 3 h or traveled not more than 1.6 km.

Please refer to the "Tire Information Label" for cold tire pressure criteria.

### Tire information label



A data label with tire information is attached to the driver center pillar, and the tire shall be inflated according to the tire pressure specified on the data label.

### Inspection of tire pressure

The tire pressure shall be inspected with a tire pressure gauge when the tire is cold.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and inspect the valve for leaks with the soap solution.

**Caution**

Appropriate amount of household washing liquid can be added in the clear water and then the mixture can be applied to the valve; afterwards, observe whether any bubbles are generated; if so, air leak occurs.



2. After the tire pressure gauge is installed on the valve, the tire pressure will be displayed on the tire pressure gauge;
3. Inspect and adjust the tire pressure until it reaches the standard value. Refer to "Tire information label" on page208for tire pressure standards.

After the inspection, be sure to install the valve cap back on the valve.

**Warning**

If the tire pressure is obviously insufficient, and the vehicle continues to run at a high speed, the tire will continue to be deformed, which will easily lead to overheating of the tire and cause the tire to burst.

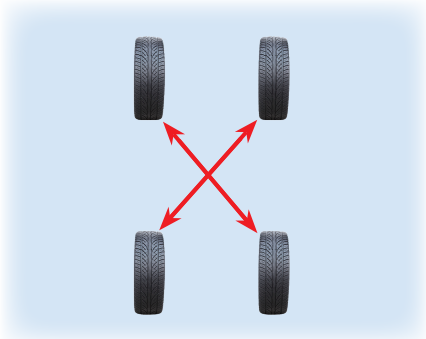
## Tire rotation

The tire rotation aims to make all tires be worn evenly and to extend the overall life of the tire. Tire rotation shall be carried out every 10,000km.

Before the tire rotation, inspect the tires and wheels for damage. If no damage is found, perform tire rotation and wheel alignment.

**Notice**

- The front wheel shall be kept in a better condition before tire rotation.
- If a tire is worn unevenly or excessively, go to an authorized dealer for wheel alignment.
- For vehicles equipped with an indirect TPMS, TPMS initialization is required after the tire rotation. (Please refer to page 152)



The tire rotation shall be done in a diagonal manner. The spare wheel does not involve tire rotation.

After tire rotation, make sure that all wheel bolts are tightened to 100 N·m. Adjust the air pressure of all wheels to the specified value. Inspect the tightening of the wheel bolts after driving 1,000km.

**Warning**

Dirt on the joint surface between the wheel and the brake disc may cause the wheel bolts to loosen, which may cause the wheels to fall off and even cause a traffic accident. Therefore, when replacing the wheel, the rust or dirt on the joint surface between the wheel and the brake disc shall be removed.

## Inspecting wheel dynamic balance

The dynamic unbalance of vehicle will cause that the wheels sway, the tires are worn improperly, and the driving stability is affected. Therefore, the dynamic balance of wheels shall be checked regularly in authorized dealers.

## Selection and replacement of tires

### Purchase of new tire

Check the tire label for the type and size of tire.

Tires of the same brand, model, size, pattern and wear must be used on the same axle.

### Replacement of tire

Replace the tire with a new one if any of the followings occurs:

- The tire wear mark has been worn.
- The cord in the tire rubber can be seen.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked and the gap is deep enough to see the cords.
- A tire bulges, swells or is laminated.
- The tire is punctured, scratched, or otherwise damaged, and the size and location of the damage makes the tire is difficult to be repaired.
- The age of the tires is 6 years from the date of production.

**⚠ Warning**

- Do not use old tires of unknown origin as they have no visible damage, but they may be damaged, it means the vehicle may be out of control and cause traffic accidents.
- The road adhesion of new tires within the first 500 km may not reach the optimal state, so the vehicle shall be carefully driven at the appropriate speed, and the new tires shall be well run-in to prevent accidents.
- Even if the tire is not used, it will also age with time. Regardless of the remaining thread depth of the tire, it shall be replaced after the use duration of tire reaches 6 years.
- Frequent driving in a hot environment or under overloading will lead to overheating and accelerated aging of the tire, thus causing the service life of the tire to be shortened. In this case, the tire shall be inspected more frequently to prevent the tires from bursting and causing accidents.
- Mixed use of tires of different brands, different structures (radial tires and bias tires), different sizes and different patterns may adversely affect the braking and handling of the vehicle and may cause an accident.

### Winter tire

It is recommended to use winter tires of the same size as the original tires, and all four wheels must be replaced.

In winter, the winter tires can greatly improve the operating stability of the vehicle.

Once the temperature rises above 7°C, the summer tires shall be used immediately, as the summer tires are better than the winter tires when driving on snow-free roads.

**i Caution**

Winter tires can greatly improve the operating stability of the vehicle when driving on snow and ice. Winter tires shall be replaced when the temperature is below -7°C.

**⚠ Warning**

The vehicle speed must not exceed the maximum allowable vehicle speed of the installed winter tires. If the speed exceeds the maximum allowable speed of winter tires, the tire may suffer sudden pressure loss, shelling, and even puncture, which is easy to cause an accident!

## Handling for accidental puncture

The tubeless tires are used for this vehicle, so puncture is not common in normal driving and even rarer if the tires are properly maintained. However, in the event of a puncture, the following measures are recommended:

- If a front tire bursts, the vehicle will run sideways under the drag effect of the flat tire. At this point, immediately release the accelerator pedal, hold the steering wheel to control the steering, keep the vehicle in the original lane, and gently depress the brake pedal to park the vehicle in the emergency lane or at a safe position, and install the spare wheel to the rear wheel, and finally install the rear wheel to the faulty front wheel.
- If a rear tire bursts, the vehicle may suffer abnormal vibration and noise during driving, but the steering can still be controlled. At this point, release the accelerator pedal, turn the steering wheel in the direction in which the vehicle is expected to travel to maintain control of the vehicle, and slightly depress the brake pedal to park the vehicle in the emergency lane or at a safe position, and then replace with the spare wheel.

## Replacement of rim

If the rim is distorted, cracked, corroded or severely scratched, replace it. If the tire leaks due to rim damage, the rim shall also be replaced (except for some repairable aluminum rims).

The load capacity, specification, offset, and installation dimension of the new rim shall be the same as those of the original wheel, and the installation method shall be the same.

**Notice**

- The use of unsuitable rims will affect the vehicle's braking and handling, which may cause the tires to come out of the rim and cause the vehicle to run out of control, thus leading to an accident.
- The use of rims that do not conform to specifications may also cause problems regarding bearing life, cooling of brake, calibration of speedometer and odometer, ground clearance, clearance between tire or tire chain and body and chassis, etc.
- It is also dangerous to replace with the used rim. As it is unknown how the old wheel has ever been used or how many miles has the old rim ever traveled, there may be invisible cracks that may cause an accident while driving.

## Tire chain

Do not install tire chains that are not approved by Dongfeng Motor Corporation. Unsuitable tire chains will damage tires, rims, brakes and vehicle body. Please note the following requirements when using:

- The tire chains can only be mounted to the drive wheels. Please observe the tire chain installation instructions and speed limits for different road conditions.
- To avoid tire damage and excessive wear of the tire chains, be sure to remove the tire chains when driving on snow-free roads.
- Please choose suitable snow chains according to the tire models:

# Scheduled maintenance

## Introduction to regular maintenance

In order to maintain the vehicle in good condition and extend its service life, it is necessary to maintain the vehicle according to the provisions in Regular Maintenance.

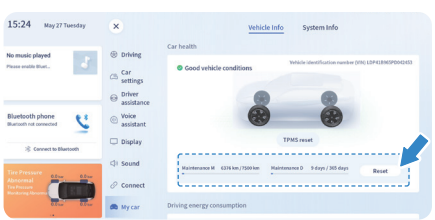
Regular maintenance includes first maintenance and periodic maintenance. The first maintenance refers to the first regular maintenance after purchasing a new vehicle, which shall be carried out at 5,000 km or 3 months after purchasing the new vehicle, whichever comes first. After the first maintenance, the vehicle needs to undergo periodic maintenance every 7,500 km or 12 months, whichever comes first. The contents of the first maintenance and periodic maintenance are detailed in the Schedule of Regular Maintenance Items.

The maintenance mileage (engine operation mileage/mileage-based maintenance interval) or maintenance time (number of days of vehicle operation/time-based maintenance interval) are displayed on the CSD of the vehicle. When the engine operation mileage is equal to the mileage-based maintenance interval (7,500 km) or the number of days that the vehicle runs is equal to time-based maintenance interval (365 days), you should go to a franchise store in time for regular maintenance and re-initialize the maintenance mileage reminder.

Failure to regularly maintain the vehicle in a timely manner will reduce the usage performance of the vehicle, causing damage to the vehicle and making you lose the right to claim a warranty.

## View of regular maintenance information

Tap the " " icon at the bottom status bar or the "Vehicle Center" icon in the Full Function menu bar on the CSD to enter the Vehicle Center interface.




On the Vehicle Center interface, tap "My Car" to enter My Car interface, where you can view the engine operation mileage and maintenance days, whichever comes first.

## Schedule of Regular Maintenance Items

| Maintenance items | First Maintenance | Periodic maintenance (every 12 months or 7,500 km, whichever comes first) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| Charging port | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Charging port and rubber plug | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Motor harness and controller sealing (visual inspection, fixation, connection, routing, aging, exposure, etc.) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| High voltage battery appearance check (odor, connectors, fasteners, water inlet and outlet pipes, case frame); software diagnostics (more frequent problem of cell, system insulation resistance, system alarm, software version) | / | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| ★ Motor coolant | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R |
| ★ High voltage battery coolant | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R |
| Cooling system pipeline | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| ★ Engine oil | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Oil filter element | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Air filter element | I | C | C | C | R | C | C | C | R | C | C | C | R |
| Canister filter | / | / | / | / | / | / | R | / | / | / | / | / | R |
| Oil deposition in relief valve and inlet/outlet pipe | / | I | C | I | C | I | C | I | C | I | C | I | C |
| ★ Engine coolant | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R |
| Radiator fan | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Spark plug | / | / | / | / | R | / | / | / | R | / | / | / | R |
| Throttle | / | / | C | / | C | / | C | / | C | / | C | / | C |

| Maintenance items | First Maintenance | Periodic maintenance (every 12 months or 7,500 km, whichever comes first) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| ★ Brake fluid (level, leakage) | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R |
| Power steering function and its pipe (line) joint condition | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Working conditions of window washer fluid, washer pump and wiper | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Connection, fixing and sealing conditions of A/C pipeline | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| 12V battery SOC and wiring condition | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Sealing of fuel system pipelines and joints | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Condition of each harness in the engine compartment (fixing, connection, orientation, aging, exposed cables, etc.) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Transmission fluid (change according to inspection results) | / | / | / | / | I | / | / | / | I | / | / | / | I |
| Key torque of chassis | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Inspection and maintenance of sunroof | I | I | L | I | L | I | L | I | L | I | L | I | L |
| Connecting condition of chassis and front and rear suspensions | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Front and rear shock absorbers and their dust cover | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Steering tie rod ball joint, steering gear housing and dust cover | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Stabilizer bar connecting rod joints | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Axle shaft and dust boot | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Triangular arm bush and its ball joint | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Front and rear brakes and related components (tightening, wear, aging or oil leakage) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Vacuum air intake pipe, brake pipe (connection, wear, fixing, leakage, aging) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Exhaust system pipeline | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Wheel conditions (tightening, wear, aging, tire pressure, including spare wheel) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Tire inspection (dynamic balance review and repair as appropriate) | / | / | I | / | I | / | I | / | I | / | I | / | I |

| Maintenance items | First Maintenance | Periodic maintenance (every 12 months or 7,500 km, whichever comes first) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| A/C filter element | I | C | R | C | R | C | R | C | R | C | R | C | R |
| Working conditions of instrument panel and indicators on it and resetting of maintenance mileage | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Working conditions of interior and exterior lights | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Seat belts, buckles, retractors, fixing bolts and regulator | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Visual conditions of door handles and body | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Door locks, hinges, door stops, engine hood latch and trunk lid lock | I | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |
| Reading and clearing vehicle DTCs | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Inspection of after-market parts installation, modification of vehicle (if any, record it) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake pedal (nut tightening, switch sticking) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| EPB | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |

Note: In the table, I=Inspection, after inspection, if cleaning, adding, adjustment, lubrication, repair or replacement is required, follow the relevant processes; R=Replacement, L=Lubrication, C=Clean; /= no operation.

For maintenance items marked with " ★ " in the table, it is recommended to shorten the mileage-based maintenance interval by 30~35% when the vehicle is operated under following harsh conditions, : ① Being used as taxis, rental cars, school buses and in other operational activities, or competitions, performances and entertainment, military operations, requisitions and for other purposes; ② Being used in urban areas (e.g. as a taxi); ③ Going through frequent starting or stop, or often driving at low speeds; ④ Being used over a long term in complex terrain such as hills and mountains; ⑤ Being used over a long term in areas where the temperature is often higher than 30°C, lower than -15°C, or with a lot of dust.

Please use genuine Dongfeng Aeolus coolant to avoid internal aluminum corrosion of cooling system due to use of non-genuine Dongfeng Aeolus coolant.

As to the first maintenance and the first periodic maintenance in the above table, the sequence numbers are the same, but the maintenance items are not the same; The first maintenance is only applicable to the first maintenance of the new vehicle, while for the periodic maintenance after the first maintenance, the items of first periodic maintenance will be skipped and the items of the second periodic maintenance will be proceeded to; Following the 12th periodic maintenance, the periodic maintenance will be performed in cycles every 12 months or 7,500 km, whichever comes first, and the maintenance items are in accordance with the first periodic maintenance.

### Plastics and rubber

Plastics and rubber parts are marked in accordance with the current regulations.

Most of plastics are thermoplastic and can be recycled by fusion, pelletization and crushing.

Tires and seals can be used for waterproof roll, rubber runways, etc. after being crushed.

### Metal

100% recyclable.

### Window

Collected and processed by manufacturer after being removed.

### Scrapped or damaged parts

It shall not be discarded casually and shall be delivered to an authorized dealer for recycling.

### Waste oil

Authorized dealers are responsible for collection and disposal of waste oil/fluids.

### Discarded battery and cell

Do not discard the battery and remote control cell casually which are harmful to environment. Please send them to authorized collection points.

Maintaining your vehicle at an authorized dealer can achieve waste recycling and reuse, contributing to environmental protection.

If individuals need to take away the waste after maintenance, they shall also do a good job in recycling and environmental protection.

### Wasted high voltage battery

When the high voltage battery needs to be repaired or replaced, it should be sent to an authorized dealer with appropriate capabilities.

When the vehicle meets the end-of-life requirements, it should be sent to the qualified end-of-life automobile recycling and dismantling enterprises to dismantle the high voltage battery.

Waste high voltage battery shall be delivered to the enterprises with relevant qualifications stipulated by national laws and regulations for centralized recycling. Do not discard or store the batteries at will, so as to avoid environmental pollution and potential safety hazards.

The used high voltage battery should be handed over to other units or individuals and no dismantling is allowed without approval; otherwise, you should bear the corresponding responsibility for the consequential environmental pollution or safety accidents.

# 5. Audio Visual System*

**Precautions .....218**
Battery Safety and Precautions.....218
Precautions for navigation* .....219
**Problems that may be encountered 220**
Turning on/off the system .....221
A/C/seat control* .....224
Scenario mode .....225
Radio/DAB radio* .....226
Multimedia .....226
Bluetooth phone .....227
Gallery .....228
CarPlay.....229
Android auto .....229
Vehicle center.....230
Energy Center .....237

## Battery Safety and Precautions

- Please read this manual and related information carefully before using the system. The product pictures in the manual are for reference only, and please refer to the real object.
- Please remove the protective film on the screen before you start using the IVI system.
- Please do not operate the system while driving as it may cause accidents due to lack of mental concentration. It is recommended to park the vehicle in a safe place before watching the video or operating the system.
- Please do a good job of waterproofing, moisture-proofing, sulfuric acid-proofing and other liquid corrosion prevention in the system, so as not to affect the normal use of the system.
- Please do not use any hard objects to rub or hit the screen to ensure the screen display performance.
- When the host panel and LCD screen are dirty, please wipe them with a soft cloth and neutral cleaner. Wiping with thinner such as alcohol will cause the panel to be scratched or the text to disappear.
- Before the vehicle is undergoing maintenance, please turn off the IVI and then the main power.
- It is not recommend to charge a cell phone through the USB interface. Otherwise, it may cause the following problems:

1. Due to different charging methods, the USB interface only supports charging of some cell phones;
2. Each cell phone requires a different charging current, and charging through a non-professional charger may result in shorter battery life and unsatisfactory charging efficiency;
3. Each cell phone consumes power differently, and the standby time after charging with a non-professional charger may be shortened.

- This machine supports the following USB flash disk brands:

1. Kingston, AIGO, Sony, HP, Samsung and Tsinghua Tongfang;
2. Special tips: Due to the diversity of internal protocols and compression forms of audio and video files of USB flash disks, the USB flash disks in your hand may not be able to be used normally on this system, and it is recommended that you use branded products supported by this system.

- Please make sure that this system is far away from dangerous objects.
- Please use this system reasonably during the vehicle traveling, so as not to affect the driving.
- Under complicated road conditions, please use this system reasonably so as not to affect the use effect.
- If the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight and the temperature inside the vehicle is high, it is recommended to let it cool down before using the system.
- When replacing the fuses of this system, be sure to use fuses of the same specification (current specification). Do not use a different fuse or other wire substitutions, which may result in serious damage to the system.
- As this system consists of precision parts, do not disassemble any parts without authorization. If necessary, go to a franchise store for maintenance.

## Precautions for navigation*

The system outputs guidance information to guide the vehicle to a destination safely. Please read the following precautions carefully to ensure proper use of the navigation system:

- This system is not a replacement for your own judgment. Any route recommendations provided by the navigation system should be in accordance with local traffic laws and it cannot be a replacement for your personal judgment and/or safe driving experience. Do not follow the route recommended by the navigation system that may result in unsafe driving, put you in danger or lead to an illegal location or an area that you believe is unsafe.
- While driving, look through the display only when necessary and when it is safe to drive, and do not perform multi-step operations continuously or stare at the display for long periods of time. To do this, park the vehicle in a safe and legal area.
- The map data used by the navigation program is the up-to-date data at the time of manufacture of this product. Due to changes in facilities, roads, and areas, it is possible that the navigation system may not guide you to the destination. In this case, you should drive at your own discretion.
- The map data only recommend routes, without considering the safety hazards involved with recommended routes. The system does not reflect factors such as road closures or road construction. If the navigation system cannot recommend routes, you should drive at your own discretion.
- It is possible that the navigation system may display incorrect vehicle location. In this case, you should make a judgment based on the current driving situation.
- Be sure to adjust the volume of the navigation system to a level that you can hear the traffic sound outside the vehicle. Accidents may occur if you cannot hear outside sounds.

Anyone prepared to use this navigation system should carefully read the above precautions and follow the instructions below:

- If you have any questions about the functions of the navigation system stipulated in this manual, please contact the franchise store before using this navigation system.
- We are not responsible for any problems caused by failure to follow the instructions in this manual.

## GPS

### Satellite signal reception

- This navigation system can receive signals from 12 satellites. In general, accurate positioning of the vehicle can be determined with signals from 3~4 satellites received. However, weather conditions or high-rise buildings in the city can influence the reception of signals.
- Providing satellite signals can be received properly, the error of the standard satellite positioning system is about 7 m.
- Deviations still occur even with the system's automatic correction function when driving on flat road sections. For example, the actual road you are driving on may not exactly match that marked on the map, or even the vehicle may be driving on a parallel road that is close to the actual road.
- Normal reception of satellite signals is affected in the following situations, resulting in errors: tunnels, underground parking lots, under overpasses or viaducts, boulevards, or antennas are obstructed.

## IVI system restart



When the CSD experiences screen lag, no response, or other abnormalities, the system can be restarted by following these steps:

1. Turn on the hazard warning light;
2. Pull over safely, shift into P gear, and apply the parking brake;
3. At the same time, press and hold the left down button, voice recognition button, and page turning button on the steering wheel for 10 seconds before releasing them;
4. Wait for a period of time, all screens will restart, and the IVI system will resume operation.

If the IVI system does not return to normal, please contact a franchise store in a timely manner.

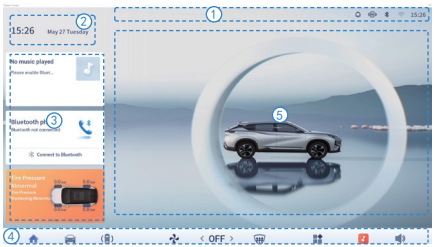
**Notice**

- In the restart process of IVI system, please ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe area.
- It is strictly prohibited to restart the IVI system while driving.
- Please do not restart the IVI system in the process of vehicle software upgrade.
- If the screen does not return to normal after the IVI system restarts, you can try locking the vehicle to sleep mode. If the problem still cannot be solved, please contact a franchise store.

If it is believed that certain functions in the vehicle A/V system are not functioning, before servicing, carefully read the operating instructions in the A/V system section of this manual and check them against the following table, which will help to clear the malfunction.

| | Phenomenon | Possible causes and solutions |
|---|---|---|
| General conditions | The main unit does not function with no display. | Remove the main unit from the instrument panel and check the fuses and plugs of the main unit and the vehicle (at a franchise store) |
| | Main unit works, but there is no sound or very small sound. | Turn up the volume<br>Check the settings of front-back and left-right balance of speakers |
| USB flash disk | Failure to read files (music, videos, pictures) stored on USB flash drive | File format is incorrect. Re-store the required audio, video and picture files in the USB flash drive. |
| | Unstable playback | Data cable is not acceptable; the connection quality between USB flash disk and A/V system is poor, and replace the qualified data cable as a result. |
| | Wait for a long time after you insert the USB flash drive | Too large or too many files stored in the USB flash drive. Properly clear the unwanted files.<br>Use a USB flash drive with faster transfer speed |

## Turning on/off the system




If the vehicle has been activated and logged in, the system will automatically boot into the main interface.

- ① Status bar

In general, a row of icons will be displayed on the screen, displaying status information of other function icons.

- ② Time and date display
- ③ Multimedia and application navigation bar

It displays the multimedia play interface, weather and commonly used application icons. Tap the corresponding icon to open the application.

- ④ Bottom navigation bar

Display main menu interface buttons, all Apps menu interface buttons, commonly used A/C buttons, custom function buttons (scene mode, Bluetooth phone), and volume control buttons.

- ⑤ Homepage function display area

This area displays the detailed functional interface corresponding to the navigation bar.

### Caution

- If the vehicle is not activated, after the IVI is turned on, the system will jump to the QR code scanning interface, on which you can use the official mobile App to scan the QR code on the IVI to complete the vehicle activation.
- Please activate your vehicle in a timely manner, otherwise you will not be able to use the IOV function of this vehicle.
- When the system network is available, online music, online news, and audio radio can be played online.
- The IVI will be updated continuously, and it is just the effect diagram of the factory version. As there will be a slight change after the system update, refer to the actual car for the picture.
- In order to obtain a better application experience, some applications require binding login application accounts.

## Top status bar




Generally, a row of icons will be displayed on the top of the screen, showing status information such as door locks, time, WiFi, Bluetooth, and phone battery level.

## Bottom status bar




① Press and release to enter the main menu interface; Press and hold to set the display area for homepage functions (map, social, driving control).

② Tap to enter the vehicle center interface.

③ Tap to enter the AVM interface.

④ A/C control buttons, used to control air volume, temperature, and front windshield defogging. Tap the air volume control button/ swipe up the screen to access the A/C control interface.

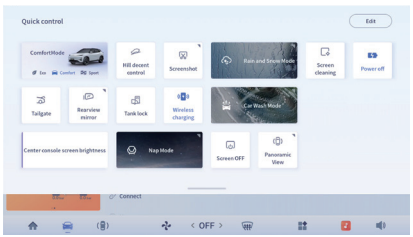
⑤ Tap to enter the all Apps menu interface; Tap again to exit.

⑥ Custom function location. You can add functions from the all Apps menu to this location.

⑦ Tap to turn on the volume adjustment interface.

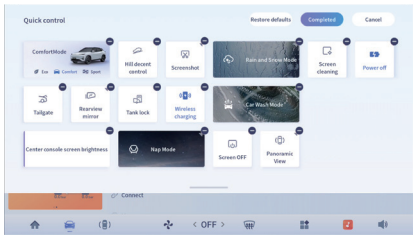
## Drop-down shortcut menu interface

Swipe down the screen on the main menu interface to enter the drop-down shortcut menu interface:




- In the drop-down shortcut menu interface, you can control and set functions such as "driving mode", "CSD brightness", "scenario mode", "tailgate", "AVAS", "screen cleaning", "rearview mirror", "filler cap", "screen off", etc.

Tap "Edit" in the upper right corner of the shortcut menu bar to set the shortcut control icons:




- In the shortcut menu editing interface, you can add/delete/replace relevant function icons.

## Drop-up shortcut menu interface

Swipe up the screen at the bottom of the main menu interface to enter the A/C/seat control interface:



In theA/C/seat control interface, the A/C system, seat heating* and ventilation* functions can be set.

## Full function menu interface

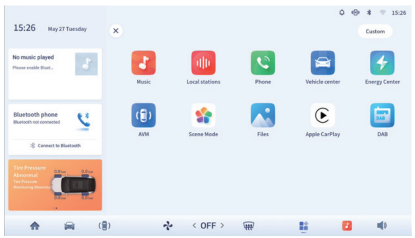


Tap the " " icon at the bottom status bar to enter the All Apps menu interface, which contains all the applications and applets in the system.

Select any App to enter the corresponding function interface.

## Custom bottom function display

Press and hold the App icon or tap the "Custom" icon in the upper right corner of the interface to enter the all Apps editing status:



- In the all Apps editing status, drag any application icon to the custom function at the bottom to replace the application position and complete the application customization.

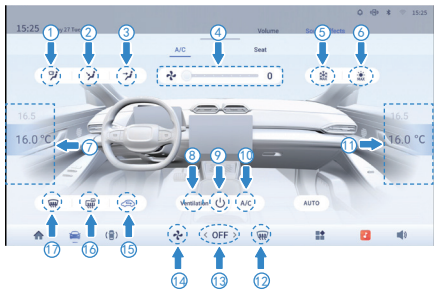
## A/C/seat control*

You can turn on the A/C/seat control interface by tapping the temperature control icon on the bottom status bar or swiping up the screen:



The A/C control interface is entered by default for the first time. In the A/C/seat control interface, you can set the A/C system, seat heating, and seat ventilation.

## A/C control



① Front defogging/blowing mode button
② Foot blowing mode button
③ Face blowing mode button
④ Air volume control
⑤ Max cooling button
⑥ Maximum heating button
⑦ Left temperature control
⑧ AUTO mode button
⑨ A/C ON/OFF button
⑩ A/C (cooling) button
⑪ Right temperature control
⑫ Front windshield defroster button
⑬ Temperature control
⑭ Air volume control
⑮ Recirculation/fresh air button
⑯ Rear windshield defrosting/defogging button
⑰ Front windshield defroster button

If you need to exit the A/C control interface, you can tap the icon in the bottom status bar of the interface to return to the homepage or go to other function menus.

**Caution**

When a button is highlighted on the CSD or the button indicator is illuminated, it indicates that this button function is turned on.

## Seat control*

After entering the A/C/seat control interface, you can tap the "Seat" icon to enter the seat control interface:



① Driver seat ventilation activation and gear adjustment

② Driver seat heating activation and gear adjustment

③ Front passenger seat heating activation and gear adjustment

④ One-click shutdown of seat ventilation, heating and massage

If you need to exit the seat control interface, you can tap the icon in the bottom status bar of the interface to return to the homepage or go to other function menus.

**Caution**

When a button is highlighted on the CSD or the button indicator is illuminated, it indicates that this button function is turned on.

### Seat ventilation control*



Tap the driver seat ventilation/front passenger seat ventilation icon on the interface to pop up the seat ventilation function setting bar (OFF - OFF, low gear, medium gear, high gear).

Tap the icon to enter the corresponding operating mode.

### Seat heating control*



Tap the driver seat heating/front passenger seat heating icon on the interface to pop up the seat heating function setting bar (OFF - OFF, low gear, medium gear, high gear).

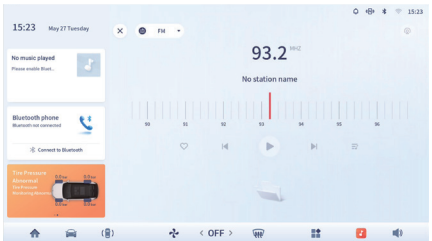
Tap the icon to enter the corresponding operating mode.

## Scenario mode

Tap the "Scenario Mode" icon in All Apps menu interface or the " " icon in the bottom status bar or the scenario mode card in the drop-down menu to enter the scenario mode control interface, where you can switch between Nap Mode, Rain & Snow Mode, and Car Wash Mode. which can be set as required.

## Radio/DAB radio*

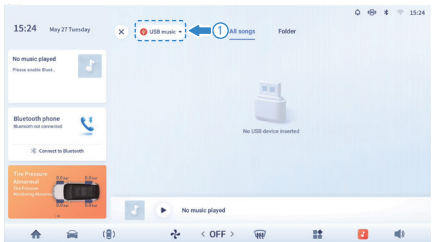
Tap the "Radio" or "DAB" icon in the All Apps menu to open the radio or DAB radio interface:




- In the Radio/DAB Radio interface, you can select and play the current channel station.

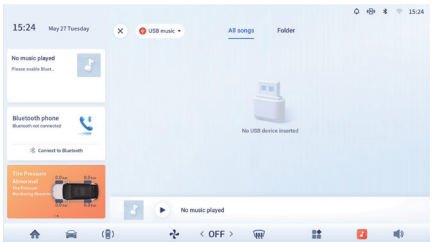
## Multimedia

You can tap the "Multimedia" icon in the full menu or the multimedia navigation bar card on the homepage to turn on the music interface:



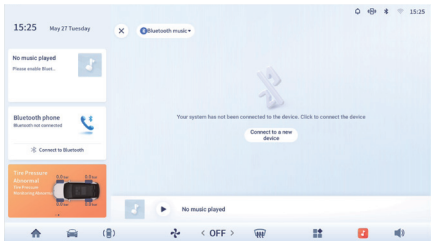

- In the music interface, you can select and play USB music, Bluetooth music, NetEase cloud music or Himalaya Radio.
- Tap the icon (1) at the upper of the interface to switch between USB music and Bluetooth music.

## USB music




- Before playing USB music, please make sure that the USB device is correctly plugged in and a valid music file exists.
- During music playback, you can switch music or pause the playback with the buttons on the playback interface or the button on the steering wheel .

## Bluetooth music



- Before playing Bluetooth music, please ensure that your phone has established a Bluetooth connection with the IVI and is playing valid music.
- During music playback, you can switch music or pause the playback with the buttons on the playback interface or the button on the steering wheel .

## Bluetooth phone

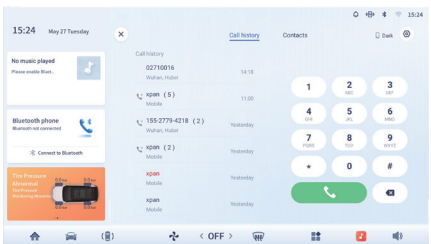
Before using Bluetooth phone, please make sure that the Bluetooth function of the system and cell phone is turned on normally and in the connection state.

**Notice**

- When establishing Bluetooth connection between cell phone and vehicle, please turn on the cell phone Bluetooth detection switch in Settings>Bluetooth.
- The effective range of Bluetooth is 5 meters. When the Bluetooth connection is disconnected, the IVI will not display the call history and contacts. When Bluetooth is reconnected, the IVI will display the call history of the most recent phone connection to the IVI.
- Deleting contacts or call history is only valid for the IVI.
- Multimedia or radio playback is paused when using a Bluetooth phone call, which will continue after the Bluetooth phone call ends.
- The first time you make a Bluetooth connection, you need to click on the phone to confirm the connection.
- Bluetooth connection can be memorized. After the first successful connection, if the cell phone Bluetooth and the infotainment system Bluetooth are turned on next time, they will be connected automatically.

In the homepage or Full Function menu interface, you can tap the "Phone" icon to open the phone interface.

If the phone Bluetooth is not connected, it will show that Bluetooth device is not connected and you need to connect Bluetooth; If Bluetooth is connected and the call logs have been synchronized, the call logs list will be displayed by default:



- Tap the "Contacts" icon on the interface to synchronize phone contact data. (Note: For some phones, you need to agree to "Synchronize Contacts" on the phone side)

### Recent contacts

- In the main interface of Bluetooth phone, the most recent contacts are displayed by time. You can slide up and down the screen to check more contacts.
- After the corresponding contact is tapped, the phone number will be dialed out.

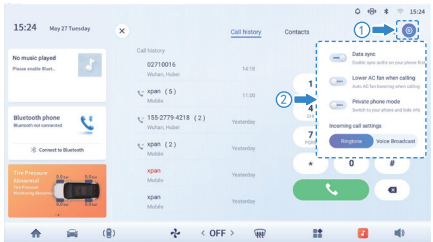
### Dialpad

- In the main interface of Bluetooth phone, you can tap “Dial” on the left side of the interface to enter the dialpad interface, and when any number button is pressed, the contacts with fuzzy matches to associated numbers will be displayed on the top. When you tap the call icon “ ” at the bottom left of the dialpad, or tap any contact’s avatar, you can dial out the phone number.

### Search contacts

- In the main interface of Bluetooth phone, you can tap “Contacts” on the interface to enter the contact directory interface. When you enter the keyword or phone number of the contact you need to search in the search box, it will show fuzzily matched contacts. When you select a contact and enter the contact details interface, one or more numbers of the contact will be shown. If you tap any number, it will be dialed out.

### More settings for Bluetooth phone




- Touch the icon in the upper right corner of the Bluetooth phone main interface (1) to bring up the Bluetooth phone more function settings bar (2), on which you can turn on/off data synchronization, reducing wind speed during calls, and privacy phone mode functions; you can also set the ringtone and broadcast for incoming calls.

## Gallery

Tap the "Gallery" icon in the Full Function menu bar to enter the photo/video viewing interface. In this interface, you can view local photo albums and USB files.

### USB file

Before playing USB files, please ensure that the USB device is inserted correctly and there are valid video/image files inside. The video/image files in the USB flash disk will be displayed.

- Tap any file in the video/image to enter the video playing/image viewing interface.

**Caution**

- During the video playing process, if there is a third-party operation (such as a call), the system will automatically pause the playing. After the third-party operation is completed, the playing will continue.

**Notice**

- The "DVR usage restriction" is enabled by default. When the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h, a pop-up message will appear saying "DVR Restricted, please go to Vehicle Settings - Usage Preference to release the restriction". When turning off the "DVR usage restriction" in Vehicle Settings - Usage Preference, a pop-up box will appear for secondary confirmation.

## CarPlay

You can tap the "CarPlay" icon in the Full Function menu bar to enter the CarPlay connection interface.

- CarPlay interconnectionbetween the mobile phone and the vehicle can be achieved through wired or wireless connections.
- After successful CarPlay connection, the mobile application can be mapped to the IVI and run for use on the IVI.

### Wired connection of CarPlay

1. Connect your mobile phone to the IVI via USB cable;
2. If it is the first time to connect, follow the prompts to confirm the connection on the mobile phone, and the IVI will display "Connecting";
3. After successful CarPlay connection, the IVI will enter the CarPlay UI interface.

**Notice**

- If other devices are already connected to the IVI, a pop-up window will appear prompting whether to connect a new device.
- If the mobile device is already connected to the vehicle, the next time it is connected, a pop-up window will appear prompting whether to enable automatic connection. If it is enabled, automatic connection will be performed.

### Wireless connection of CarPlay

1. Turn on IVI Bluetooth and hotspot;
2. Turn on the mobile phone Bluetooth and connect to the IVI Bluetooth and hotspot;
3. If it is the first time to connect, the connection code prompt will pop up on the IVI. Enter the connection code on the mobile phone and confirm the connection, and the IVI will display "Connecting";
4. After successful CarPlay connection, the IVI will enter the CarPlay UI interface.

**Notice**

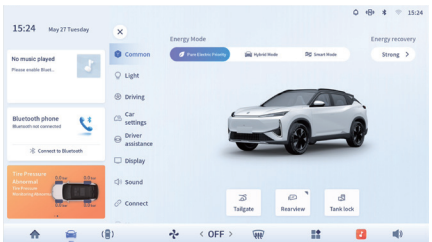
- If other devices are already connected to the IVI, a pop-up window will appear prompting whether to connect a new device.
- If the mobile device is already connected to the vehicle, the next time it is connected, a pop-up window will appear prompting whether to enable automatic connection. If it is enabled, automatic connection will be performed.

## Android auto

You can use the CarAuto Global app on your mobile phone to scan the QR code on the IVI and seamlessly connect to the Android Auto function; It can also be connected via USB.

## Vehicle center

Tap the " " icon in the bottom status bar or the "Vehicle Center" icon in the Full Function menu barto enter the Vehicle Center interface:



- In the Vehicle Center menu interface, you can view and set the functions of "Common", "Lighting", "Driving", "Vehicle Settings", "Assisted Driving*", "Display", "Sound", "Connection" and "My Car".
- If you select the corresponding menu and slide the secondary menu up and down, you can view more vehicle settings.

## Common

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Common" to enter the common function operation and setting interface:



① Tap to exit the Vehicle Center and automatically save the current settings;

② Tap to switch between energy modes (pure electric priority/hybrid mode);

③ Tap to bring up the energy recovery settings bar, which can be set to off/weak/medium/strong;

④ Tap to open/close the tailgate;

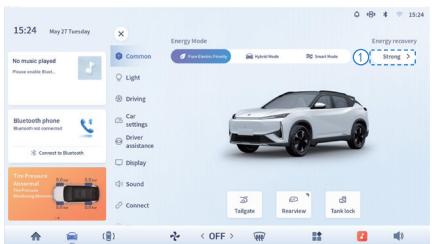
⑤ Tap to pop up the exterior rearview mirror setting interface, on which you can control the electric unfolding/folding of exterior rearview mirror*, left rearview mirror auto folding at reversing*, right rearview mirror auto folding at reversing*, auto folding when locking vehicle, and adjustment of rearview mirror angle;

⑥ Tap to open the filler cap.

### Caution

When a button is highlighted on the CSD or the button indicator is illuminated, it indicates that this button function is turned on.

### Energy recovery



- Tap the ( › ) icon ① to bring up the energy recovery settings bar, on which the energy recovery mode can be set to off/weak/medium/strong.

## Rearview mirror control

Tap the [后视镜] icon on the common function operation setting interface to pop up the exterior rearview mirror control interface:




① Touch to exit the exterior rearview mirror control interface and automatically save the current settings;

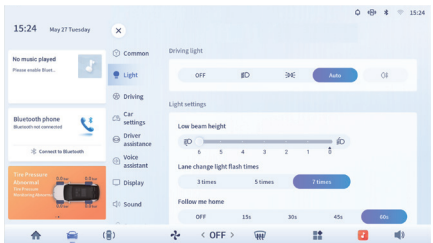
② Tap to unfold the exterior rearview mirrors;

③ Tap to fold the exterior rearview mirrors.

④ Slide left and right to turn on/off the auto folding at vehicle locking function.

## Lighting

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Lighting" to enter the lighting function operation setting interface to control the vehicle lights.




On the exterior lighting control bar, the following operations can be performed:

- Turn off all lights and turn on/off low beam, position light, automatic headlight, and rear fog light control; Turn on/off daytime running lights;
- Adjust the headlight illumination height;
- Adjust the number of lane change light flashing (3 times/5 times/7 times);
- Adjust the duration of follow me home (off/15s/30s/45s/60s);
- Turn on/off the interior light automatic lighting function.

## Vehicle settings

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Vehicle Settings" to enter the Vehicle Settings interface, where you can adjust and set the seat position, door and window lock, and usage preference.

### Seat position




① Tap to exit the Vehicle Center and automatically save the current settings;

② Tap to enter the seat position setting interface;

③ Tap to enter the door and window lock setting interface;

④ Tap to enter the usage preference setting interface;

⑤ Tap [▲] or [▼] to raise or lower the seat backrest;

⑥ Tap [▲] or [▼] to raise or lower the seat;

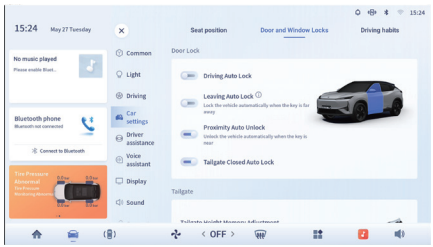
⑦ Tap [◀] or [▶] to move the seat forward or backward;

⑧ After the seat adjustment, tap to remember the current seat position; You can also modify the exclusive name of the seat.

# A/V system*

## Door and window lock

In the Vehicle Settings interface, touch "Door and Window Lock" to enter the door and window lock settings interface:




- In the Vehicle Settings interface, you can slide up and down to set the door lock, tailgate, window, and wiper functions.

### Door lock setting:

Turn on/off the autolock after driving, walk-away autolock and walk-in autolock functions.

### Tailgate setting:

Adjust the tailgate height through memory adjustment.

### Window setting:

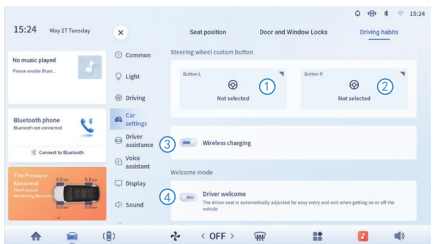
Turn on/off the auto window lifting at vehicle locking.

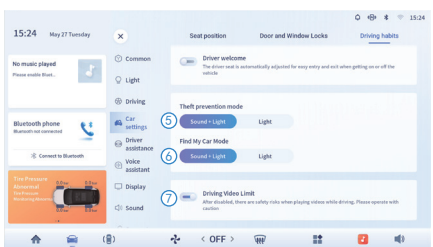
### Wiper setting:

Turn on/off automatic wiper * and wiper maintenance mode.

## Usage preference

In the Vehicle Settings interface, tap "Usage Preference" to enter the Usage preference setting interface:




- In the Usage Preference interface, swipe up and down to set and operate functions including steering wheel custom buttons, wireless charging, welcome mode*, anti-theft mode, car search mode, and driving video restriction.

### Steering wheel custom button setting:

Touch button L bar ① or button R bar ② to enter the steering wheel custom button settings:

- The steering wheel buttons L or R can be set as AVM assist*/tailgate switch.

### Wireless charging setting:

③ Slide the slider to turn on/off the wireless charging function.

### Welcome mode* setting

④ Slide the slider to turn on/off the driver seat active welcome*.

### Anti-theft mode/car search mode setting

### Anti-theft mode setting:

⑤ Anti-theft reminder mode setting, switchable sound+light/light selection.

### Car search mode setting:

⑥ Car search reminder mode setting, switchable sound+light/light selection.

### Driving video restriction setting

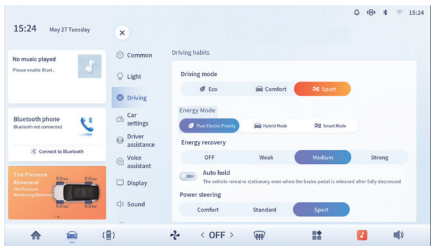
⑦ Slide the slider to turn on/off the driving video restriction.

**Caution**

When the driving video restriction function is turned on, the video cannot be played when the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h.

## Driving

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Driving" to enter the driving function setting interface:




- In the Driving Settings interface, swipe up and down to set energy mode, usage preference and driving safety.

### Energy mode settings

Energy mode setting, with options for pure electric priority/hybrid mode;

### Usage preference setting

### Driving mode setting:

Driving mode setting, with options for ECO/ Comfort/Sport modes.

### Energy recovery mode setting:

Energy recovery mode setting, with options for weak/medium/strong recovery modes.

### Auto Hold setting:

Slide the slider to turn on/off the AUTOHOLD function.

### Power steering mode setting:

Power steering mode setting, with options for comfort/standard/sports.

### Hill descent control (HDC) setting:

Slide the slider to turn on/off the HDC function.

### ESC setting:

Slide the slider to turn on/off the ESC function.

### Driving safety setting

### Parking brake setting:

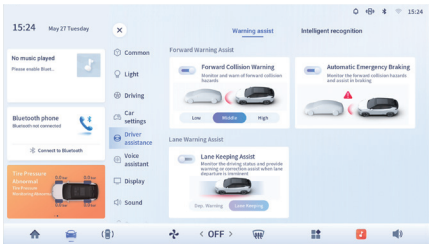
Tap to enable the electronic parking brake (EPB).

### Power off setting:

Tap to turn off the vehicle power supply for vehicle power off.

## Assisted driving*

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Assisted Driving" to enter the assisted driving interface:




- In the Assisted Driving interface, slide up and down to set forward warning assist, and lane warning functions.

### Forward warning assist setting:

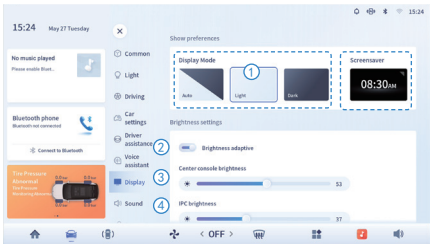
- In the forward warning assist interface, forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking can be set. Slide the function bar slider to turn on/off the corresponding function.
- When the forward collision warning function is turned on, the warning sensitivity (low/medium/high) can be set.

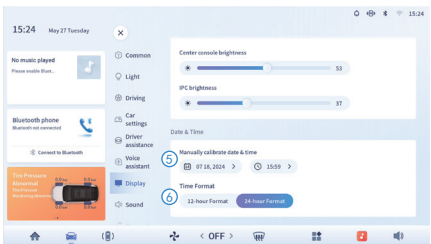
### Lane warning assist setting:

- In the lane warning assist interface, lane keeping assist function can be set. Slide the function bar slider to turn on/off the corresponding function.
- When the lane keeping assist function is turned on, warning modes can be set (deviation warning/lane keeping).

## Display

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Display" to enter the display settings interface:




- In the display settings interface, swipe up and down to set display preferences, brightness settings, and time and date settings.

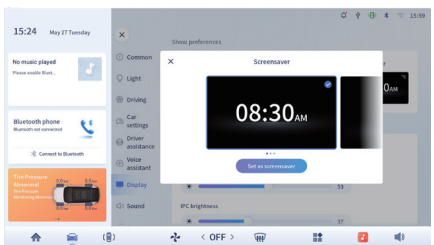
### Screen setting

### Display mode setting:

① Tap to select auto/day/night display mode; When set to auto mode, the system will switch display modes based on the sunrise and sunset environment.

### Screensaver setting:

② Tap to pop up the screensaver setting interface:




- Swipe left and right to view more screensavers. After selecting the screensaver, tap "Set as screensaver" to complete the screensaver settings.

### Brightness setting:

③ Drag the slider of the brightness bar on the CSD left and right to adjust the brightness of the CSD.

④ Drag the slider of the brightness bar on the instrument screen left and right to adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster screen.

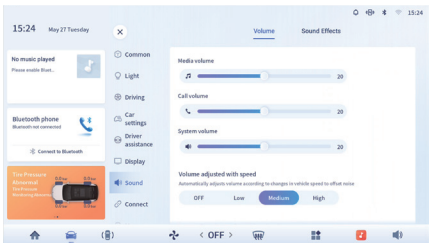
### Time and date settings:

⑤ Calibrate date and time.

⑥ Switch time format (12 hour/24 hour).

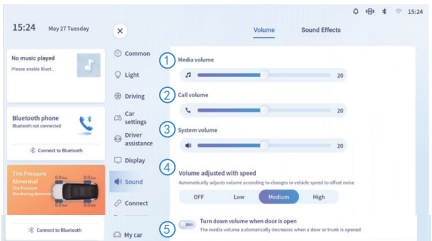
## Sound

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Sound" to enter the sound setting interface:




- In the sound setting interface, swipe up and down to set the volume for multimedia, phone, and systems.
- Swipe left or right on the screen or tap the function icon at the top of the screen to switch between selecting volume/audio function settings.

## Volume setting




① Drag the slider of the media volume bar left and right to adjust the media volume;

② Drag the slider of the call volume bar left and right to adjust the call volume;

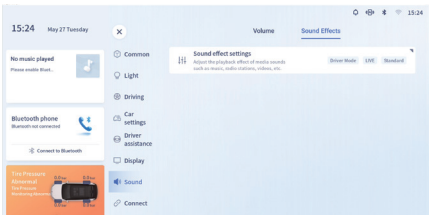
③ Drag the slider of the system volume bar left and right to adjust the system volume;

④ Slide the slider left and right to turn on or off the volume adjustment with speed function;

⑤ Slide the slider left and right to turn on or off the volume reduction at door opening function.

## Sound effect settings

In the sound setting interface, touch the "Sound Effect" icon at the top of the interface to enter the sound effect setting interface:

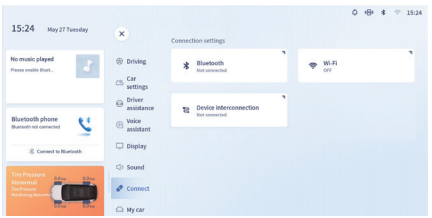



Tap to pop up the sound effect setting interface:

- In the sound effect setting pop-up interface, you can adjust the sound field, sound effects, and equalizer.

## Connection

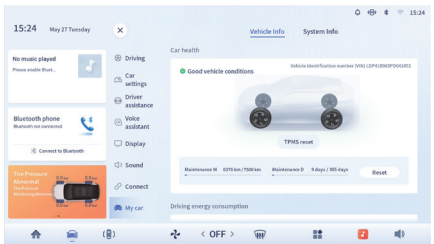
In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "Connect" to enter the device connection interface:




- In the connection interface, Bluetooth, WiFi, and device interconnection information can be viewed and set.

## My Car

In the Vehicle Center interface, tap "My Car" to enter the My Car interface:




- In My Car interface, you can view and set vehicle settings and system information functions.
- Swipe left or right on the screen or tap the function icon at the top of the screen to jump to the corresponding function interface.

### Vehicle information

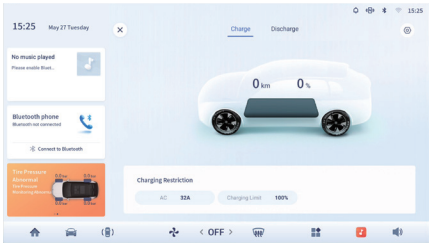
- In the vehicle information bar, you can view maintenance mileage, maintenance days, vehicle energy consumption, and energy consumption information for the past 7 days. Besides, you can also perform operations such as tire pressure reset, maintenance mileage reset, and vehicle report viewing.

### System information

- In the system information bar, you can perform system version upgrades, factory resetting, and view system related instructions.
- You can slide the slider of the night automatic upgrade bar to turn on/off the night automatic upgrade function.

## Energy Center

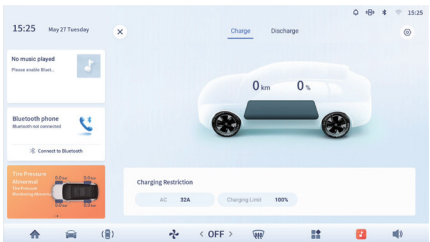
Tap the "Energy Center" icon in the Full Function menu bar to enter the Energy Center interface:




- In the energy center menu interface, you can view and set the "charging", "discharging" and "energy flow" functions.
- Swipe left or right on the screen or tap the function icon at the top of the screen to jump to the corresponding function interface.

## Charging

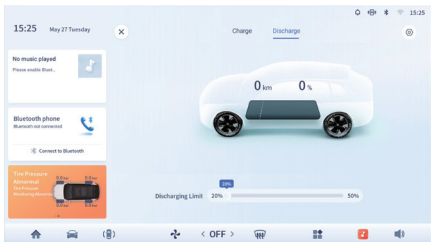
In the energy center interface, tap the "Charging" bar to enter the charging setting interface:




- The charging status (charging voltage/current/power) is displayed in the Energy Center - Charge interface.

## Discharge

In the energy center interface, tap the "Discharging" bar to enter the discharging setting interface:

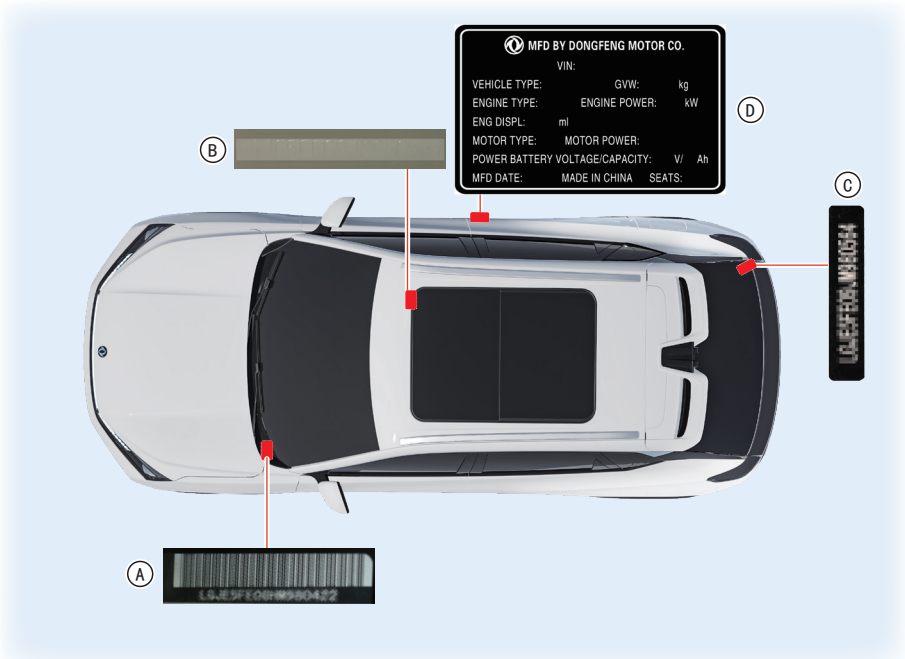



- The discharge status is displayed in the Energy Center - Discharge interface.
- You can set the discharge limit value.

# 6. Technical parameters

**Vehicle identification.....240**
VIN and product label.....240
Event data recorder (EDR).....241
OBD.....243
Microwave window .....243
Engine serial number .....243
Multi-mode transmission nameplate.....244
High voltage battery serial number.....244
Warning label.....244
**Main Parameter of Vehicle.....246**
**Overall dimensions .....249**
**Main fluid specifications and capacity .....250**

## VIN and product label




The VIN is the vehicle's unique identification number, which is pasted or marked in the front and rear of the vehicle as shown in the above figure (only the VIN on the vehicle):

- The VIN (A) is located at the top left of the instrument panel and is visible through the front windshield.
- The VIN (B) is engraved on the end face of the front crossbar of the right front seat and can be seen by moving the seat backward and removing part of carpet.
- The VIN code (C) is located on the right inner edge of the tailgate (only visible when the tailgate is opened).

The manufacturer's plate (D)is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.

## Event data recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR), which works in the airbag ECU to monitor, collect and record data from the vehicle and occupant protection systems before, during and after a collision event (a collision or other physical event that meets or exceeds a triggering threshold or any other event that results in the deployment of an airbag, curtain airbag, seat belt pretensioner, etc., whichever occurs first). This data will help to understand the operation of the vehicle systems.

To read the data recorded by EDR, special equipment is required and the right to use the EDR should be granted. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other third parties with special equipment, such as law enforcement, are able to read the corresponding information if they are entitled to use the EDR.

- Model of EDR data reading equipment: Dongfeng AEOLUS X431-PRO4 diagnostic scan tool
- Access to the EDR data reading equipment: it is provided by the supplier specified by the competent authority, and can be purchased from the franchise store or the supplier.

In the event of a serious crash with airbag deployment, the data stored in the EDR will be locked and cannot be overwritten. Other crash data will be overwritten with the latest accident data.

The following data is recorded by the automobile accident recording system in this vehicle:

| S/N | Name | Description of data usage |
|---|---|---|
| 1[a] | Longitudinal delta-V | Characterize the change in the longitudinal speed of the vehicle. The longitudinal delta-V is only the longitudinal component of the total delta-V. |
| 2[a] | Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V | Characterize the maximum value of the cumulative change in vehicle speed in the X-axis direction recorded by the EDR. This data shall be used in conjunction with the "Time to achieve maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V". |
| 3[a] | Time to achieve maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V | The time from time zero to the maximum cumulative change in velocity recorded by the EDR in the X-axis direction. This data shall be used in conjunction with "Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V". |
| 4[b] | Clipping mark | The point in time when an accelerometer first reaches the maximum value within the specified range. |
| 5 | Vehicle speed | Wheelside line speed or the vehicle speed as measured by other means. |
| 6 | Service brake, On or Off | Detect whether the driver has pressed the brake pedal. |
| 7 | Driver seat belt status | Record the operating status of the driver seat belt buckle. |
| 8[c,d] | Accelerator pedal position, percentage of depressing | Record the percentage of the actual accelerator pedal position in relation to the fully depressed position. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9[d,e] | Revolutions per minute (RPM) | Revolutions per minute of the main crankshaft of the vehicle engine (not applicable to pure electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid electric vehicles). |
| 10 | In-event power-on cycle | The number of power cycles in the ECU recording EDR data since the first use of ECU up to the time of the event occurrence. |
| 11 | Power-on cycles at the time of reading | The number of power cycles in the ECU recording EDR data since the first use of ECU up to the time of reading. |
| 12 | Complete status of event data recording | A status identifier for whether or not event data has been completely logged and stored in the ECU recording EDR data. |
| 13 | Time interval between this event and the last event | If two events occur within 5 seconds, this time is the time elapsed from the start of event X to the start of event X-1. |
| 14 | Vehicle identification number | Vehicle identification number (VIN) assigned by the vehicle manufacturer. |
| 15 | Hardware number of ECU recording EDR data | Hardware number of airbag ECU (EDR) |
| 16 | Serial number of the ECU recording EDR data | Serial number of airbag ECU (EDR), unique for each specified vehicle |
| 17 | Software number of the ECU recording EDR data | Software number of airbag ECU (EDR) |
| [a]If the longitudinal acceleration parameters in the table above are recorded, the longitudinal delta-V, the maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V and the time to achieve the maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V may not be recorded. | | |
| [b]If the longitudinal or transverse acceleration parameter in the table above is recorded, the clipping mark parameter may not be recorded. | | |
| [c]If the engine throttle position parameter in the table above is recorded, the accelerator pedal position parameter may not be recorded. | | |
| [d]Vehicles with K-wires or not equipped with airbags may be free of recording. | | |
| [e] Not recorded for pure electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid electric vehicles. | | |

## OBD



OBD is located on the lower left side of the instrument panel and is used for digital communication between the vehicle ECU and the scan tool. This OBD can be connected to a scan tool to obtain information such as vehicle ECU data, DTCs, VIN, etc.

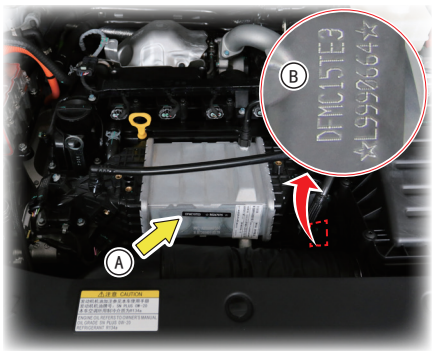
The VIN can be read by Dongfeng AEOLUS X431-PRO4 diagnostic scan tool as follows: connect the OBD, turn on the diagnostic scan tool, click the Dongfeng AEOLUS diagnostic software to select the corresponding model, and enter the EMS/VIU, etc. to select the system identification to read the VIN.

## Microwave window



The microwave window is located around the interior rearview mirror, where communication devices related to ETC, access control, smart parking or others can be installed. This area does not allow the application of solar film, etc., to ensure effective data reading.

## Engine serial number

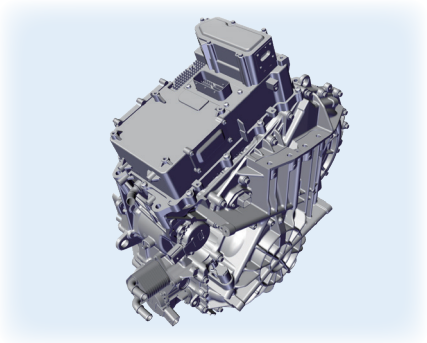



The engine serial number Ⓐ affixed to the engine intake intercooler is visible when the engine hood is opened.

The engine serial number Ⓑ stamped on the engine block is located on the block on the side that connects to the transmission (refer to the example above).

The unique engine serial number is engraved on the cylinder block of each engine.

## Multi-mode transmission nameplate



Each multi-mode transmission has a nameplate affixed to the housing.

## High voltage battery serial number



The high voltage battery serial number is pasted on the upper surface of the high voltage battery, which is not visible until the vehicle is lifted.

## Warning label

### Coolant label



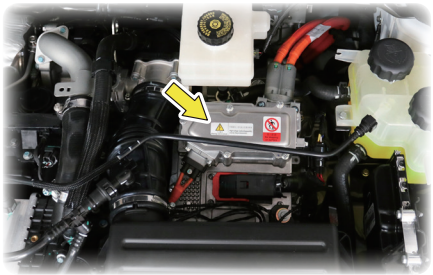
The coolant label is pasted on the upper side of the coolant reservoir.

## Oil and refrigerant instruction labels




The engine oil and A/C refrigerant instruction labels are affixed to the right side of the inside front edge of the hood.

## Warning labels of high voltage components



Warning instruction labels are affixed to high voltage components such as the motor controller and high voltage battery.

**⚠ Warning**

The high voltage components are pasted with orange high voltage warning labels, on which the contents should be noticed. To avoid electric shock, do not touch high voltage components, high voltage cables (orange) and their connectors.

## Main Parameter of Vehicle

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Model series | | L7 |
| Vehicle model | | DFM6473M5F1CHEV |
| Curb weight (kg) | | 1725 |
| Maximum permissible gross mass (kg) | | 2121 |
| Maximum allowable total mass and front axle load (kg) | | 1137 |
| Maximum allowable total mass and rear axle load (kg) | | 984 |
| Transmission type | | 4DHT (multi-speed transmission) |
| Drive type | | Front-engine, front-wheel drive 2WD |
| Engine | Engine model | DFMC15TE3 |
| | Type of engine | Four-stroke, water-cooled, in-line four-cylinder, DOHC, turbocharged, direct injection |
| | Engine displacement (L) | 1.497 |
| | Cylinder diameter × stroke (mm) | 73×89.39 |
| | Compression ratio | 14:1 |
| | Fuel | 92# and above unleaded gasoline |
| | Maximum net power/speed (kW/rpm) | 110/5200 |
| | Rated power/speed (kW/rpm) | 113/5200 |
| | Max. torque/speed (Nm/rpm) | 230/3500~4500 |
| High voltage battery | Energy density of battery pack (Wh/kg) | 105 |
| | Total power (kWh) | 17 |
| | Nominal voltage (V) | 320 |
| | Capacity (Ah) | 54 |
| | Type of high voltage battery | Energy type |
| | Mass of high voltage battery (kg) | 166 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Model series | | | | L7 |
| Vehicle model | | | | DFM6473M5F1CHEV |
| Drive motor | Motor type | | | Permanent magnet synchronous |
| | Working voltage range (V) | | | 250~365 |
| | Rated power/kW | | | 35 |
| | Peak power (kW) | | | 100 |
| | Rated speed (rpm) | | | 3673 |
| | Rated torque (N·m) | | | 91 |
| | Peak torque (N·m) | | | 260 |
| Max. vehicle speed (km/h) | | | | 170 |
| Range (km) | | | | 86 |
| Fuel consumption (L/100km) | | | | 1.49 |
| Electricity consumption (kWh/100km) | | | | 15.2 |
| Electricity equivalent fuel consumption (L/100km) | | | | 1.72 |
| Fuel consumption under minimum state-of-charge (L/100km) | | | | 4.81 |
| Brake system | Front brake | | | Ventilation disc, floating caliper clearance self-adjustment |
| | Rear brake | | | Solid disc, floating caliper clearance self-adjustment |
| | Dimensions of front/rear brake disc (mm) | | | Φ330×30/Φ290×12 |
| Front suspension system; | | | | McPherson independent suspension |
| Rear suspension system | | | | E-type four-link rear suspension |
| Wheel alignment parameters | Front overhang | Toe-in | Left/right | 0°5′±5′ |
| | | Camber angle | Left/right | -0°10′±40′ |
| | | Kingpin caster | Left/right | 4°27′±45′ |
| | | Inclination angle | Left/right | 13°32'±45' |
| | Rear overhang | Toe-in | Left/right | 0°5′±5′ |
| | | Camber angle | Left/right | -1°8′±30′ |
| | Mass state of vehicle | | | Kerb state |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Model series | | L7 |
| Vehicle model | | DFM6473M5F1CHEV |
| Front overhang (mm) | | 965 |
| Rear overhang (mm) | | 945/930 |
| Min. ground clearance (mm) | | 160/165 |
| Approach angle/departure angle (°) | | 18/25 |
| Max. gradeability under full load (%) | | ≥30 |
| Main tire | Tire model | 235/55 R19 or<br>225/60 R18 |
| | Light-load pressure (no load) (kPa) | Front 250/rear 250 |
| | Heavy-load pressure (full load) (kPa) | Front 260/rear 260 |
| | Rim spec. and material | 18×6.5J aluminum alloy or<br>19×7.5J aluminum alloy |
| Standby | Rim spec. and material | - |
| | Tire model | - |
| | Tire pressure (kPa) | - |

Note: ● The fuel consumption data is measured according to GB/T 19233--2008 *Measurement methods of fuel consumption for light-duty vehicles*. Measurement. Actual fuel consumption will vary depending on driving habits, road conditions, climatic conditions, fuel quality, load, driving conditions, etc. during actual driving. Actual fuel consumption may vary with load, driving conditions, etc.

## Requirements for wheel dynamic balance

| Wheel type | Aluminum wheel | Steel wheel |
|---|---|---|
| Wheel imbalance (Main tire) | Inner rim ≤15g<br>Outer rim ≤ 25g | |

## Reasonable use range of brake friction pair

| Item | Standard size | Wear limit |
|---|---|---|
| Front brake pad thickness | 9mm | 2mm |
| Front brake disc thickness | 30mm | 28mm |
| Rear brake pad thickness | 10mm | 2mm |
| Rear brake disc thickness | 12mm | 10mm |

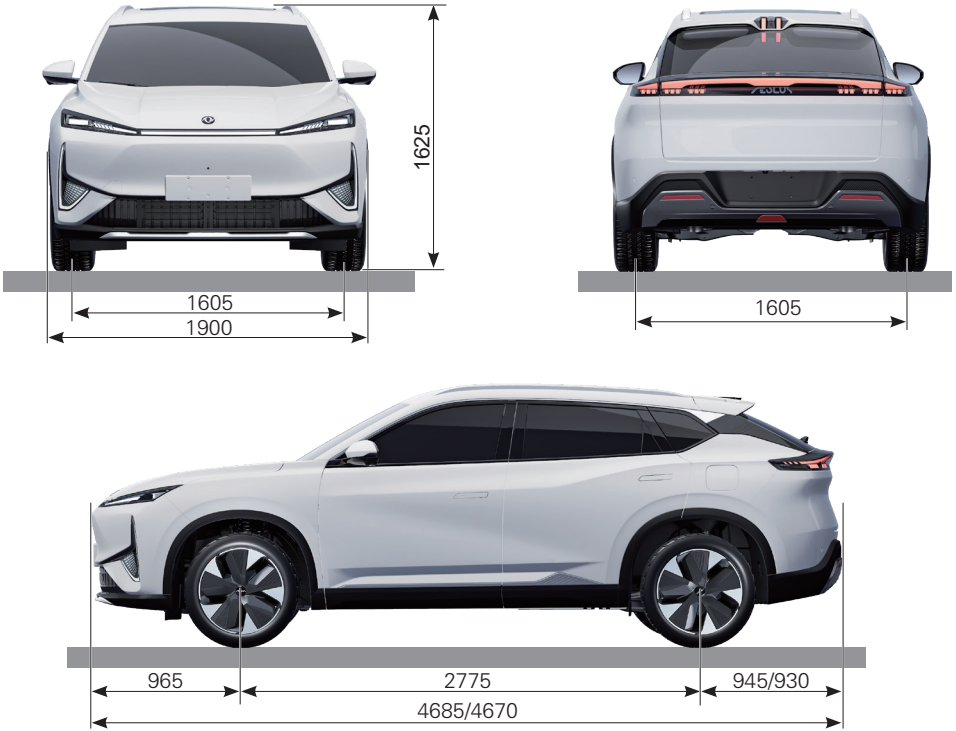
## Technical parameters of brake pedal

| | |
|---|---|
| Brake pedal force | ≤500N |
| Free stroke | (5~15) mm |
| Initial brake pedal position<br>Distance to carpet (vertical height) | 100mm |

Note: ● All technical data listed herein are for reference and in no case shall be used as the basis for vehicle acceptance and registration, which shall be subject to national announcement.

● The fuel (gas) hose is free of replacement. It shall be inspected during daily use or maintenance. If it is damaged, it must be replaced.

Dimension unit: mm




Note: ●The exterior rearview mirrors and antennas are not included in the measurement of vehicle dimensions.

## Main fluid specifications and capacity

The following are approximate values, which may vary slightly in practical uses. Follow the instructions in the "Inspection and Maintenance" section to determine the proper dosage.

| Fluid name | | Model | Grade | Capacity |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | DFM6473M5F1CHEV |
| Gasoline | | Please use 92# and above unleaded gasoline only, 92# gasoline recommended | - | 55±2L (max. filling amount) |
| Engine oil | | 0W-20 | SN PLUS | 4L |
| Transmission fluid | | Castrol BOT790 | - | 3.85L |
| Coolant | Water tank preheater circuit | DF-3 | -35°C | 10.3L |
| | Intake intercooler circuit | DF-3 | -35°C | 2.4L |
| | Motor cooling circuit | DF-3 | -35°C | 4L |
| Brake fluid | | CTE 4606 | - | 1.26L |
| Windshield washer fluid | | Jinbo -20 | ≤-20°C | 2L (effective volume) |
| A/C Refrigerant | | R134a | - | 0.62kg |

Note: The model of engine oil given in the table is the model of engine oil added before delivery, and the consumption is the after-sales refilling amount, that is, the amount of oil added after replacing the oil filter element during maintenance.

## Recommenced fuel type

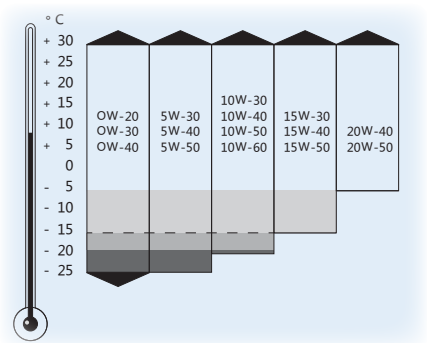


Open the fuel filler cap and you can see the fuel label. Add fuel according to the fuel type indicated on the label.

**Notice**

Never use leaded gasoline. Otherwise, the TWC will be damaged.

## Recommended engine oil type




The above figure shows the oil viscosity values suitable for different ambient temperature ranges for reference.

## A/C system refrigerant

The refrigerant R134a is used for the A/C system of this vehicle. Other refrigerants, if applied, may result in the replacement of whole A/C system.

It is prohibited to drain the refrigerant of R134a used for this vehicle directly to the air, even though it has no damage to the ozone layer. But it will have a slight impact on global warming.

It is recommended to recycle and reuse the refrigerant. If you need to service the A/C system, go to an authorized dealer for inspection or repair.